

Volume 23, Number 8  
ISSN:1521-1398 PRINT,1572-9206 ONLINE

December 2017



**Journal of  
Computational  
Analysis and  
Applications**

**EUDOXUS PRESS,LLC**

**Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications**

**ISSNno.'s:1521-1398 PRINT,1572-9206 ONLINE**

**SCOPE OF THE JOURNAL**

**An international publication of Eudoxus Press, LLC  
(fifteen times annually)**

**Editor in Chief: George Anastassiou**

**Department of Mathematical Sciences,**

**University of Memphis, Memphis, TN 38152-3240, U.S.A**

**ganastss@memphis.edu**

**<http://www.msci.memphis.edu/~ganastss/jocaaa>**

The main purpose of "J.Computational Analysis and Applications" is to publish high quality research articles from all subareas of Computational Mathematical Analysis and its many potential applications and connections to other areas of Mathematical Sciences. Any paper whose approach and proofs are computational, using methods from Mathematical Analysis in the broadest sense is suitable and welcome for consideration in our journal, except from Applied Numerical Analysis articles. Also plain word articles without formulas and proofs are excluded. The list of possibly connected mathematical areas with this publication includes, but is not restricted to: Applied Analysis, Applied Functional Analysis, Approximation Theory, Asymptotic Analysis, Difference Equations, Differential Equations, Partial Differential Equations, Fourier Analysis, Fractals, Fuzzy Sets, Harmonic Analysis, Inequalities, Integral Equations, Measure Theory, Moment Theory, Neural Networks, Numerical Functional Analysis, Potential Theory, Probability Theory, Real and Complex Analysis, Signal Analysis, Special Functions, Splines, Stochastic Analysis, Stochastic Processes, Summability, Tomography, Wavelets, any combination of the above, e.t.c.

"J.Computational Analysis and Applications" is a peer-reviewed Journal. See the instructions for preparation and submission of articles to JoCAAA. Assistant to the Editor:

Dr.Razvan Mezei,mezei\_razvan@yahoo.com, Madison,WI,USA.

**Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications(JoCAAA)** is published by **EUDOXUS PRESS,LLC**,1424 Beaver Trail

Drive,Cordova,TN38016,USA,anastassioug@yahoo.com

<http://www.eudoxuspress.com>. **Annual Subscription Prices:**For USA and

Canada,Institutional:Print \$750, Electronic OPEN ACCESS. Individual:Print \$380. For any other part of the world add \$140 more(handling and postages) to the above prices for Print. No credit card payments.

**Copyright**©2017 by Eudoxus Press,LLC,all rights reserved.JoCAAA is printed in USA.

**JoCAAA is reviewed and abstracted by AMS Mathematical Reviews,MATHSCI,and Zentralblat MATH.**

It is strictly prohibited the reproduction and transmission of any part of JoCAAA and in any form and by any means without the written permission of the publisher.It is only allowed to educators to Xerox articles for educational purposes.The publisher assumes no responsibility for the content of published papers.

---

## Editorial Board

### Associate Editors of Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications

---

**Francesco Altomare**

Dipartimento di Matematica  
Universita' di Bari  
Via E.Orabona, 4  
70125 Bari, ITALY  
Tel+39-080-5442690 office  
+39-080-3944046 home  
+39-080-5963612 Fax  
altomare@dm.uniba.it  
Approximation Theory, Functional  
Analysis, Semigroups and Partial  
Differential Equations, Positive  
Operators.

**Ravi P. Agarwal**

Department of Mathematics  
Texas A&M University - Kingsville  
700 University Blvd.  
Kingsville, TX 78363-8202  
tel: 361-593-2600  
Agarwal@tamuk.edu  
Differential Equations, Difference  
Equations, Inequalities

**George A. Anastassiou**

Department of Mathematical Sciences  
The University of Memphis  
Memphis, TN 38152, U.S.A  
Tel. 901-678-3144  
e-mail: ganastss@memphis.edu  
Approximation Theory, Real  
Analysis,  
Wavelets, Neural Networks,  
Probability, Inequalities.

**J. Marshall Ash**

Department of Mathematics  
De Paul University  
2219 North Kenmore Ave.  
Chicago, IL 60614-3504  
773-325-4216  
e-mail: mash@math.depaul.edu  
Real and Harmonic Analysis

**Dumitru Baleanu**

Department of Mathematics and  
Computer Sciences,  
Cankaya University, Faculty of Art  
and Sciences,  
06530 Balgat, Ankara,  
Turkey, dumitru@cankaya.edu.tr

Fractional Differential Equations  
Nonlinear Analysis, Fractional  
Dynamics

**Carlo Bardaro**

Dipartimento di Matematica e  
Informatica  
Universita di Perugia  
Via Vanvitelli 1  
06123 Perugia, ITALY  
TEL+390755853822  
+390755855034  
FAX+390755855024  
E-mail carlo.bardaro@unipg.it  
Web site:  
<http://www.unipg.it/~bardaro/>  
Functional Analysis and  
Approximation Theory, Signal  
Analysis, Measure Theory, Real  
Analysis.

**Martin Bohner**

Department of Mathematics and  
Statistics, Missouri S&T  
Rolla, MO 65409-0020, USA  
bohner@mst.edu  
web.mst.edu/~bohner  
Difference equations, differential  
equations, dynamic equations on  
time scale, applications in  
economics, finance, biology.

**Jerry L. Bona**

Department of Mathematics  
The University of Illinois at  
Chicago  
851 S. Morgan St. CS 249  
Chicago, IL 60601  
e-mail: bona@math.uic.edu  
Partial Differential Equations,  
Fluid Dynamics

**Luis A. Caffarelli**

Department of Mathematics  
The University of Texas at Austin  
Austin, Texas 78712-1082  
512-471-3160  
e-mail: caffarel@math.utexas.edu  
Partial Differential Equations

**George Cybenko**

Thayer School of Engineering  
Dartmouth College  
8000 Cummings Hall,  
Hanover, NH 03755-8000  
603-646-3843 (X 3546 Secr.)  
e-mail: george.cybenko@dartmouth.edu  
Approximation Theory and Neural  
Networks

**Sever S. Dragomir**

School of Computer Science and  
Mathematics, Victoria University,  
PO Box 14428,  
Melbourne City,  
MC 8001, AUSTRALIA  
Tel. +61 3 9688 4437  
Fax +61 3 9688 4050  
sever.dragomir@vu.edu.au  
Inequalities, Functional Analysis,  
Numerical Analysis, Approximations,  
Information Theory, Stochastics.

**Oktay Duman**

TOBB University of Economics and  
Technology,  
Department of Mathematics, TR-  
06530,  
Ankara, Turkey,  
oduman@etu.edu.tr  
Classical Approximation Theory,  
Summability Theory, Statistical  
Convergence and its Applications

**Saber N. Elaydi**

Department Of Mathematics  
Trinity University  
715 Stadium Dr.  
San Antonio, TX 78212-7200  
210-736-8246  
e-mail: selaydi@trinity.edu  
Ordinary Differential Equations,  
Difference Equations

**J .A. Goldstein**

Department of Mathematical Sciences  
The University of Memphis  
Memphis, TN 38152  
901-678-3130  
jgoldste@memphis.edu  
Partial Differential Equations,  
Semigroups of Operators

**H. H. Gonska**

Department of Mathematics  
University of Duisburg  
Duisburg, D-47048

Germany

011-49-203-379-3542  
e-mail: heiner.gonska@uni-due.de  
Approximation Theory, Computer  
Aided Geometric Design

**John R. Graef**

Department of Mathematics  
University of Tennessee at  
Chattanooga  
Chattanooga, TN 37304 USA  
John-Graef@utc.edu  
Ordinary and functional  
differential equations, difference  
equations, impulsive systems,  
differential inclusions, dynamic  
equations on time scales, control  
theory and their applications

**Weimin Han**

Department of Mathematics  
University of Iowa  
Iowa City, IA 52242-1419  
319-335-0770  
e-mail: whan@math.uiowa.edu  
Numerical analysis, Finite element  
method, Numerical PDE, Variational  
inequalities, Computational  
mechanics

**Tian-Xiao He**

Department of Mathematics and  
Computer Science  
P.O. Box 2900, Illinois Wesleyan  
University  
Bloomington, IL 61702-2900, USA  
Tel (309)556-3089  
Fax (309)556-3864  
the@iwu.edu  
Approximations, Wavelet,  
Integration Theory, Numerical  
Analysis, Analytic Combinatorics

**Margareta Heilmann**

Faculty of Mathematics and Natural  
Sciences, University of Wuppertal  
Gaußstraße 20  
D-42119 Wuppertal, Germany,  
heilmann@math.uni-wuppertal.de  
Approximation Theory (Positive  
Linear Operators)

**Xing-Biao Hu**  
Institute of Computational  
Mathematics  
AMSS, Chinese Academy of Sciences  
Beijing, 100190, CHINA  
hxb@lsec.cc.ac.cn  
Computational Mathematics

**Jong Kyu Kim**  
Department of Mathematics  
Kyungnam University  
Masan Kyungnam, 631-701, Korea  
Tel 82-(55)-249-2211  
Fax 82-(55)-243-8609  
jongkyuk@kyungnam.ac.kr  
Nonlinear Functional Analysis,  
Variational Inequalities, Nonlinear  
Ergodic Theory, ODE, PDE,  
Functional Equations.

**Robert Kozma**  
Department of Mathematical Sciences  
The University of Memphis  
Memphis, TN 38152, USA  
rkozma@memphis.edu  
Neural Networks, Reproducing Kernel  
Hilbert Spaces,  
Neural Percolation Theory

**Mustafa Kulenovic**  
Department of Mathematics  
University of Rhode Island  
Kingston, RI 02881, USA  
kulenm@math.uri.edu  
Differential and Difference  
Equations

**Irena Lasiecka**  
Department of Mathematical Sciences  
University of Memphis  
Memphis, TN 38152  
PDE, Control Theory, Functional  
Analysis, lasiecka@memphis.edu

**Burkhard Lenze**  
Fachbereich Informatik  
Fachhochschule Dortmund  
University of Applied Sciences  
Postfach 105018  
D-44047 Dortmund, Germany  
e-mail: lenze@fh-dortmund.de  
Real Networks, Fourier Analysis,  
Approximation Theory

**Hrushikesh N. Mhaskar**  
Department Of Mathematics  
California State University

Los Angeles, CA 90032  
626-914-7002  
e-mail: hmhaska@gmail.com  
Orthogonal Polynomials,  
Approximation Theory, Splines,  
Wavelets, Neural Networks

**Ram N. Mohapatra**  
Department of Mathematics  
University of Central Florida  
Orlando, FL 32816-1364  
tel.407-823-5080  
ram.mohapatra@ucf.edu  
Real and Complex Analysis,  
Approximation Th., Fourier  
Analysis, Fuzzy Sets and Systems

**Gaston M. N'Guerekata**  
Department of Mathematics  
Morgan State University  
Baltimore, MD 21251, USA  
tel: 1-443-885-4373  
Fax 1-443-885-8216  
Gaston.N'Guerekata@morgan.edu  
nguerekata@aol.com  
Nonlinear Evolution Equations,  
Abstract Harmonic Analysis,  
Fractional Differential Equations,  
Almost Periodicity & Almost  
Automorphy

**M.Zuhair Nashed**  
Department Of Mathematics  
University of Central Florida  
PO Box 161364  
Orlando, FL 32816-1364  
e-mail: znashed@mail.ucf.edu  
Inverse and Ill-Posed problems,  
Numerical Functional Analysis,  
Integral Equations, Optimization,  
Signal Analysis

**Mubenga N. Nkashama**  
Department OF Mathematics  
University of Alabama at Birmingham  
Birmingham, AL 35294-1170  
205-934-2154  
e-mail: nkashama@math.uab.edu  
Ordinary Differential Equations,  
Partial Differential Equations

**Vassilis Papanicolaou**  
Department of Mathematics  
National Technical University of  
Athens  
Zografou campus, 157 80  
Athens, Greece

tel:: +30(210) 772 1722  
Fax +30(210) 772 1775  
papanico@math.ntua.gr  
Partial Differential Equations,  
Probability

**Choonkil Park**

Department of Mathematics  
Hanyang University  
Seoul 133-791  
S. Korea, baak@hanyang.ac.kr  
Functional Equations

**Svetlozar (Zari) Rachev,**

Professor of Finance, College of  
Business, and Director of  
Quantitative Finance Program,  
Department of Applied Mathematics &  
Statistics  
Stonybrook University  
312 Harriman Hall, Stony Brook, NY  
11794-3775  
tel: +1-631-632-1998,  
svetlozar.rachev@stonybrook.edu

**Alexander G. Ramm**

Mathematics Department  
Kansas State University  
Manhattan, KS 66506-2602  
e-mail: ramm@math.ksu.edu  
Inverse and Ill-posed Problems,  
Scattering Theory, Operator Theory,  
Theoretical Numerical Analysis,  
Wave Propagation, Signal Processing  
and Tomography

**Tomasz Rychlik**

Polish Academy of Sciences  
Instytut Matematyczny PAN  
00-956 Warszawa, skr. poczt. 21  
ul. Śniadeckich 8  
Poland  
trychlik@impan.pl  
Mathematical Statistics,  
Probabilistic Inequalities

**Boris Shekhtman**

Department of Mathematics  
University of South Florida  
Tampa, FL 33620, USA  
Tel 813-974-9710  
shekhtma@usf.edu  
Approximation Theory, Banach  
spaces, Classical Analysis

**T. E. Simos**

Department of Computer

Science and Technology  
Faculty of Sciences and Technology  
University of Peloponnese  
GR-221 00 Tripolis, Greece  
Postal Address:  
26 Menelaou St.  
Anfithea - Paleon Faliron  
GR-175 64 Athens, Greece  
tsimos@mail.ariadne-t.gr  
Numerical Analysis

**H. M. Srivastava**

Department of Mathematics and  
Statistics  
University of Victoria  
Victoria, British Columbia V8W 3R4  
Canada  
tel.250-472-5313; office,250-477-  
6960 home, fax 250-721-8962  
harimsri@math.uvic.ca  
Real and Complex Analysis,  
Fractional Calculus and Appl.,  
Integral Equations and Transforms,  
Higher Transcendental Functions and  
Appl., q-Series and q-Polynomials,  
Analytic Number Th.

**I. P. Stavroulakis**

Department of Mathematics  
University of Ioannina  
451-10 Ioannina, Greece  
ipstav@cc.uoi.gr  
Differential Equations  
Phone +3-065-109-8283

**Manfred Tasche**

Department of Mathematics  
University of Rostock  
D-18051 Rostock, Germany  
manfred.tasche@mathematik.uni-  
rostock.de  
Numerical Fourier Analysis, Fourier  
Analysis, Harmonic Analysis, Signal  
Analysis, Spectral Methods,  
Wavelets, Splines, Approximation  
Theory

**Roberto Triggiani**

Department of Mathematical Sciences  
University of Memphis  
Memphis, TN 38152  
PDE, Control Theory, Functional  
Analysis, rtrggiani@memphis.edu

**Juan J. Trujillo**

University of La Laguna  
Departamento de Analisis Matematico  
C/Astr.Fco.Sanchez s/n  
38271. LaLaguna. Tenerife.  
SPAIN  
Tel/Fax 34-922-318209  
Juan.Trujillo@ull.es  
Fractional: Differential Equations-  
Operators-Fourier Transforms,  
Special functions, Approximations,  
and Applications

**Ram Verma**

International Publications  
1200 Dallas Drive #824 Denton,  
TX 76205, USA  
[Verma99@msn.com](mailto:Verma99@msn.com)  
Applied Nonlinear Analysis,  
Numerical Analysis, Variational  
Inequalities, Optimization Theory,  
Computational Mathematics, Operator  
Theory

**Xiang Ming Yu**

Department of Mathematical Sciences  
Southwest Missouri State University  
Springfield, MO 65804-0094  
417-836-5931  
[xmy944f@missouristate.edu](mailto:xmy944f@missouristate.edu)  
Classical Approximation Theory,  
Wavelets

**Lotfi A. Zadeh**

Professor in the Graduate School  
and Director, Computer Initiative,  
Soft Computing (BISC)  
Computer Science Division  
University of California at  
Berkeley  
Berkeley, CA 94720  
Office: 510-642-4959  
Sec: 510-642-8271  
Home: 510-526-2569  
FAX: 510-642-1712  
[zadeh@cs.berkeley.edu](mailto:zadeh@cs.berkeley.edu)  
Fuzzyness, Artificial Intelligence,  
Natural language processing, Fuzzy  
logic

**Richard A. Zalik**

Department of Mathematics  
Auburn University  
Auburn University, AL 36849-5310  
USA.  
Tel 334-844-6557 office  
678-642-8703 home

Fax 334-844-6555

[zalik@auburn.edu](mailto:zalik@auburn.edu)  
Approximation Theory, Chebychev  
Systems, Wavelet Theory

**Ahmed I. Zayed**

Department of Mathematical Sciences  
DePaul University  
2320 N. Kenmore Ave.  
Chicago, IL 60614-3250  
773-325-7808  
e-mail: [azayed@condor.depaul.edu](mailto:azayed@condor.depaul.edu)  
Shannon sampling theory, Harmonic  
analysis and wavelets, Special  
functions and orthogonal  
polynomials, Integral transforms

**Ding-Xuan Zhou**

Department Of Mathematics  
City University of Hong Kong  
83 Tat Chee Avenue  
Kowloon, Hong Kong  
852-2788 9708, Fax: 852-2788 8561  
e-mail: [mazhou@cityu.edu.hk](mailto:mazhou@cityu.edu.hk)  
Approximation Theory, Spline  
functions, Wavelets

**Xin-long Zhou**

Fachbereich Mathematik, Fachgebiet  
Informatik  
Gerhard-Mercator-Universitat  
Duisburg  
Lotharstr.65, D-47048 Duisburg,  
Germany  
e-mail: [Xzhou@informatik.uni-  
duisburg.de](mailto:Xzhou@informatik.uni-<br/>duisburg.de)  
Fourier Analysis, Computer-Aided  
Geometric Design, Computational  
Complexity, Multivariate  
Approximation Theory, Approximation  
and Interpolation Theory

---

**Instructions to Contributors**  
**Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications**

An international publication of Eudoxus Press, LLC, of TN.

**Editor in Chief: George Anastassiou**

Department of Mathematical Sciences  
University of Memphis  
Memphis, TN 38152-3240, U.S.A.

**1. Manuscripts files in Latex and PDF and in English, should be submitted via email to the Editor-in-Chief:**

**Prof. George A. Anastassiou**  
Department of Mathematical Sciences  
The University of Memphis  
Memphis, TN 38152, USA.  
Tel. 901.678.3144  
e-mail: [ganastss@memphis.edu](mailto:ganastss@memphis.edu)

**Authors may want to recommend an associate editor the most related to the submission to possibly handle it.**

**Also authors may want to submit a list of six possible referees, to be used in case we cannot find related referees by ourselves.**

**2. Manuscripts should be typed using any of TEX, LaTeX, AMS-TEX, or AMS-LaTeX and according to EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC. LATEX STYLE FILE. (Click [HERE](#) to save a copy of the style file.) They should be carefully prepared in all respects. Submitted articles should be brightly typed (not dot-matrix), double spaced, in ten point type size and in 8(1/2)x11 inch area per page. Manuscripts should have generous margins on all sides and should not exceed 24 pages.**

**3. Submission is a representation that the manuscript has not been published previously in this or any other similar form and is not currently under consideration for publication elsewhere. A statement transferring from the authors (or their employers, if they hold the copyright) to Eudoxus Press, LLC, will be required before the manuscript can be accepted for publication. The Editor-in-Chief will supply the necessary forms for this transfer. Such a written transfer of copyright, which previously was assumed to be implicit in the act of submitting a manuscript, is necessary under the U.S. Copyright Law in order for the publisher to carry through the dissemination of research results and reviews as widely and effectively as possible.**



**4. The paper starts with the title of the article, author's name(s) (no titles or degrees), author's affiliation(s) and e-mail addresses. The affiliation should comprise the department, institution (usually university or company), city, state (and/or nation) and mail code.**

**The following items, 5 and 6, should be on page no. 1 of the paper.**

**5. An abstract is to be provided, preferably no longer than 150 words.**

**6. A list of 5 key words is to be provided directly below the abstract. Key words should express the precise content of the manuscript, as they are used for indexing purposes.**

**The main body of the paper should begin on page no. 1, if possible.**

**7. All sections should be numbered with Arabic numerals (such as: 1. INTRODUCTION) .**

**Subsections should be identified with section and subsection numbers (such as 6.1. Second-Value Subheading).**

**If applicable, an independent single-number system (one for each category) should be used to label all theorems, lemmas, propositions, corollaries, definitions, remarks, examples, etc. The label (such as Lemma 7) should be typed with paragraph indentation, followed by a period and the lemma itself.**

**8. Mathematical notation must be typeset. Equations should be numbered consecutively with Arabic numerals in parentheses placed flush right, and should be thusly referred to in the text [such as Eqs.(2) and (5)]. The running title must be placed at the top of even numbered pages and the first author's name, et al., must be placed at the top of the odd numbered pages.**

**9. Illustrations (photographs, drawings, diagrams, and charts) are to be numbered in one consecutive series of Arabic numerals. The captions for illustrations should be typed double space. All illustrations, charts, tables, etc., must be embedded in the body of the manuscript in proper, final, print position. In particular, manuscript, source, and PDF file version must be at camera ready stage for publication or they cannot be considered.**

**Tables are to be numbered (with Roman numerals) and referred to by number in the text. Center the title above the table, and type explanatory footnotes (indicated by superscript lowercase letters) below the table.**

**10. List references alphabetically at the end of the paper and number them consecutively. Each must be cited in the text by the appropriate Arabic numeral in square brackets on the baseline.**

**References should include (in the following order):  
initials of first and middle name, last name of author(s)  
title of article,**

name of publication, volume number, inclusive pages, and year of publication.

Authors should follow these examples:

**Journal Article**

1. H.H.Gonska, Degree of simultaneous approximation of bivariate functions by Gordon operators, (journal name in italics) *J. Approx. Theory*, 62,170-191(1990).

**Book**

2. G.G.Lorentz, (title of book in italics) *Bernstein Polynomials* (2nd ed.), Chelsea, New York, 1986.

**Contribution to a Book**

3. M.K.Khan, Approximation properties of beta operators, in (title of book in italics) *Progress in Approximation Theory* (P.Nevai and A.Pinkus, eds.), Academic Press, New York, 1991, pp.483-495.

**11. All acknowledgements (including those for a grant and financial support) should occur in one paragraph that directly precedes the References section.**

**12. Footnotes should be avoided. When their use is absolutely necessary, footnotes should be numbered consecutively using Arabic numerals and should be typed at the bottom of the page to which they refer. Place a line above the footnote, so that it is set off from the text. Use the appropriate superscript numeral for citation in the text.**

**13. After each revision is made please again submit via email Latex and PDF files of the revised manuscript, including the final one.**

**14. Effective 1 Nov. 2009 for current journal page charges, contact the Editor in Chief. Upon acceptance of the paper an invoice will be sent to the contact author. The fee payment will be due one month from the invoice date. The article will proceed to publication only after the fee is paid. The charges are to be sent, by money order or certified check, in US dollars, payable to Eudoxus Press, LLC, to the address shown on the Eudoxus [homepage](#).**

**No galleys will be sent and the contact author will receive one (1) electronic copy of the journal issue in which the article appears.**

**15. This journal will consider for publication only papers that contain proofs for their listed results.**

# The Naimark-Sacker bifurcation and asymptotic approximation of the invariant curve of a certain difference equation

T. Khyat, M. R. S Kulenović\*

Department of Mathematics

University of Rhode Island, Kingston, Rhode Island 02881-0816, USA

E. Pilav†

Department of Mathematics

University of Sarajevo, 71000 Sarajevo, Bosnia and Herzegovina

September 11, 2016

## Abstract

We compute the direction of the Naimark-Sacker bifurcation for the difference equation  $x_{n+1} = p + \frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}^2}$  where  $p$  is a positive number and the initial conditions  $x_{-1}$  and  $x_0$  are positive numbers. Furthermore, we give the asymptotic approximation of the invariant curve.

Keywords: difference equation, Naimark-Sacker bifurcation, normal form. invariant curve, stability.

AMS 2010 Mathematics Subject Classification: 39A10, 39A20, 65L20

---

\*Corresponding author, *e-mail*: [mkulenovic@uri.edu](mailto:mkulenovic@uri.edu)

†Supported in part by FMON of Bosnia and Herzegovina, number 05-39-3935-1/15.

# 1 Introduction and Preliminaries

In this paper we consider the difference equation

$$x_{n+1} = p + \frac{x_n^2}{x_{n-1}^2}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \tag{1}$$

where the parameter  $a$  is positive number and the initial conditions  $x_{-1}$  and  $x_0$  are positive numbers. Clearly equation (1) has the unique equilibrium point  $\bar{x} = p + 1$ . Linear fractional version of equation (1)

$$x_{n+1} = p + \frac{x_n}{x_{n-1}}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \tag{2}$$

was considered in [3], where we proved that the unique equilibrium  $\bar{x} = p + 1$  of equation (2) is globally asymptotically stable. Introduction of quadratic terms into equation (2) changes local stability analysis and consequently the global dynamics as well. In particular, quadratic terms introduces the possibility of Naimark-Sacker bifurcation and the existence of locally stable periodic solution, see [6] for several similar examples.

The linearized equation of equation (2) at the equilibrium point  $\bar{x} = p + 1$  is

$$z_{n+1} = \frac{2}{p+1}z_n - \frac{2}{p+1}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots,$$

with the characteristic equation

$$\lambda^2 - \frac{2}{p+1}\lambda + \frac{2}{p+1} = 0,$$

and the characteristic roots

$$\lambda_{\pm} = \frac{1 \pm i\sqrt{2p+1}}{p+1}.$$

Since

$$|\lambda_{\pm}| = \sqrt{\frac{2}{p+1}}$$

it is clear that that the equilibrium point  $\bar{x} = p + 1$  is asymptotically stable if  $p > 1$ , non-hyperbolic if  $p = 1$  and unstable if  $p < 1$ . In all cases the eigenvalues are complex conjugate numbers which indicates the presence of the Naimark-Sacker bifurcation at  $p = 1$ . We will prove that indeed the equilibrium point  $\bar{x} = p + 1$  is globally asymptotically stable if  $p > \sqrt{2}$  and that the Naimark-Sacker bifurcation takes the place at  $p = 1$ . Our tool in proving global asymptotic stability of equation (2) is the result in [3, 5]. We conjecture that the equilibrium point  $\bar{x} = p + 1$  is globally asymptotically stable if  $a > 1$ . Furthermore, we give some numeric values of parameter  $a$  with corresponding periodic solutions. Our bifurcation diagram indicates a complicated behavior and possible chaos for the values  $p < 1$ .

Now, for the sake of completeness we give the basic facts about the Naimark-Sacker bifurcation.

The Hopf bifurcation is well known phenomenon for a system of ordinary differential equations in two or more dimension, whereby, when some parameter is varied, a pair of complex conjugate eigenvalues of the Jacobian matrix at a fixed point crosses the imaginary axis, so

that the fixed point changes its behavior from stable to unstable and a limit cycle appears. In the discrete setting, the Naimark-Sacker bifurcation is the discrete analogue of the Hopf bifurcation.

The Naimark-Sacker bifurcation occurs for a discrete system depending on a parameter,  $\lambda$  say, with a fixed point whose Jacobian has a pair of complex conjugate  $\mu(\lambda)$ ,  $\bar{\mu}(\lambda)$  which cross the unit transversally at  $\lambda = \lambda_0$ .

The following result is referred as the Neimark-Sacker bifurcation Theorem [1, 4, 7, 8, 11].

**Theorem 1 (Naimark-Sacker bifurcation)** *Let*

$$\mathbf{F} : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2; \quad (\lambda, x) \rightarrow \mathbf{F}(\lambda, \mathbf{x})$$

be a  $C^4$  map depending on real parameter  $\lambda$  satisfying the following conditions:

- (i)  $F(\lambda, \mathbf{0}) = 0$  for  $\lambda$  near some fixed  $\lambda_0$ ;
- (ii)  $DF(\lambda, \mathbf{0})$  has two non-real eigenvalues  $\mu(\lambda)$  and  $\bar{\mu}(\lambda)$  for  $\lambda$  near  $\lambda_0$  with  $|\mu(\lambda_0)| = 1$ ;
- (iii)  $\frac{d}{d\lambda}|\mu(\lambda)| = d(\lambda_0) < 0$  at  $\lambda = \lambda_0$  (transversality condition);
- (iv)  $\mu^k(\lambda_0) \neq 1$  for  $k = 1, 2, 3, 4$ . (nonresonance condition).

Then there is a smooth  $\lambda$ -dependent change of coordinate bringing  $F$  into the form

$$F(\lambda, \mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{F}(\lambda, \mathbf{x}) + O(\|\mathbf{x}\|^5)$$

and there are smooth function  $a(\lambda)$ ,  $b(\lambda)$ , and  $\omega(\lambda)$  so that in polar coordinates the function  $\mathcal{F}(\lambda, x)$  is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} r \\ \theta \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} |\mu(\lambda)|r + a(\lambda)r^3 \\ \theta + \omega(\lambda) + b(\lambda)r^2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3}$$

If  $a(\lambda_0) < 0$ , then there is a neighborhood  $U$  of the origin and a  $\delta > 0$  such that for  $|\lambda - \lambda_0| < \delta$  and  $x_0 \in U$ , then  $\omega$ -limit set of  $x_0$  is the origin if  $\lambda > \lambda_0$  and belongs to a closed invariant  $C^1$  curve  $\Gamma(\lambda)$  encircling the origin if  $\lambda < \lambda_0$ . Furthermore,  $\Gamma(\lambda_0) = 0$ .

If  $a(\lambda_0) > 0$ , then there is a neighborhood  $U$  of the origin and a  $\delta > 0$  such that for  $|\lambda - \lambda_0| < \delta$  and  $x_0 \in U$ , then  $\alpha$ -limit set of  $x_0$  is the origin if  $\lambda < \lambda_0$  and belongs to a closed invariant  $C^1$  curve  $\Gamma(\lambda)$  encircling the origin if  $\lambda > \lambda_0$ . Furthermore,  $\Gamma(\lambda_0) = 0$ .

Consider a general map  $\mathbf{F}(\lambda_0, \mathbf{x})$  that has a fixed point at the origin with complex eigenvalues  $\mu(\lambda_0) = \alpha(\lambda_0) + i\beta(\lambda_0)$  and  $\bar{\mu}(\lambda_0) = \alpha(\lambda_0) - i\beta(\lambda_0)$  satisfying  $\alpha(\lambda_0)^2 + \beta(\lambda_0)^2 = 1$  and  $\beta(\lambda_0) \neq 0$ . Assume that

$$\mathbf{F}(\lambda_0, \mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{A}(\lambda_0)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{G}(\lambda_0, \mathbf{x}) \tag{4}$$

where  $\mathbf{A}$  is Jacobian matrix of  $\mathbf{F}$  evaluated at fixed point  $(0, 0)$ , and

$$\mathbf{G}(\lambda_0, \mathbf{x}) := \begin{pmatrix} g_1(\lambda_0, x_1, x_2) \\ g_2(\lambda_0, x_1, x_2) \end{pmatrix}.$$

Here we donate  $\mu(\lambda_0) = \mu$ ,  $\mathbf{A}(\lambda_0) = \mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{G}(\lambda_0, x) = \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x})$ . We let  $\mathbf{p}$  and  $\mathbf{q}$  be eigenvectors of  $A$  associated with  $\mu$  satisfying

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{q} = \mu\mathbf{q}, \quad \mathbf{p}\mathbf{A} = \mu\mathbf{p}, \quad \mathbf{p}\mathbf{q} = 1$$

and  $\Phi = (\mathbf{q}, \bar{\mathbf{q}})$ . Assume that

$$\mathbf{G} \left( \Phi \begin{pmatrix} z \\ \bar{z} \end{pmatrix} \right) = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{g}_{20}z^2 + 2\mathbf{g}_{11}z\bar{z} + \mathbf{g}_{02}\bar{z}^2) + O(|z|^3)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{K}_{20} &= (\mu^2 I - A)^{-1} \mathbf{g}_{20} \\ \mathbf{K}_{11} &= (I - A)^{-1} \mathbf{g}_{11} \\ \mathbf{K}_{02} &= (\bar{\mu}^2 I - A)^{-1} \mathbf{g}_{02} \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

Let

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G} \left( \Phi \begin{pmatrix} z \\ \bar{z} \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{K}_{20}\xi^2 + 2\mathbf{K}_{11}\xi\bar{\xi} + \mathbf{K}_{02}\bar{\xi}^2) \right) \\ = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{g}_{20}\xi^2 + 2\mathbf{g}_{11}\xi\bar{\xi} + \mathbf{g}_{02}\bar{\xi}^2) \\ + \frac{1}{6}(\mathbf{g}_{30}\xi^3 + 3\mathbf{g}_{21}\xi^2\bar{\xi} + 3\mathbf{g}_{12}\xi\bar{\xi}^2 + \mathbf{g}_{03}\bar{\xi}^3) + O(|\xi|^4), \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

then

$$a(\lambda_0) = \frac{1}{2} Re(\mathbf{p}\mathbf{g}_{21}\bar{\mu}).$$

**Corollary 1 ([9])** Assume  $a(\lambda_0) \neq 0$  and  $\lambda = \lambda_0 + \eta$  where  $\eta$  is a sufficient small parameter. If  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$  is fixed point of  $F$  then invariant curve  $\Gamma(\lambda)$  from Theorem 1 can be approximated by

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \approx \bar{\mathbf{x}} + 2\rho_0 Re(\mathbf{q}e^{i\theta}) + \rho_0^2 \left( Re(\mathbf{K}_{20}e^{2i\theta}) + \mathbf{K}_{11} \right),$$

where

$$d = \frac{d}{d\eta} |\mu(\lambda)| \Big|_{\lambda=\lambda_0}, \quad \rho_0 = \sqrt{-\frac{d}{a}\eta}, \quad \theta \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Here "Re" represents the real parts of those complex numbers.

The second section of the paper gives global asymptotic stability result for the values of parameter  $p > \sqrt{2}$  and the third section gives the reduction to the normal form and computation of the coefficients of the Naimark-Sacker bifurcation and the asymptotic approximation of the invariant curve. Our computational method is based on the computational algorithm developed in [9] rather than more often used computational algorithm in [10]. The advantage of the computational algorithm of [9] lies in the fact that this algorithm computes also the approximate equation of the invariant curve in Naimark-Sacker theorem, which is not provided by Wan's algorithm. Here we give numeric and visual evidence that the approximate equation of the invariant curve is accurate. See Figure 4.

## 2 Global Asymptotic Stability

We use the method of embedding [2]. By substituting

$$x_n = p + \left( \frac{x_{n-1}}{x_{n-2}} \right)^2$$

in equation (1) we get:

$$x_{n+1} = p + \left( \frac{p}{x_{n-1}} + \frac{x_{n-1}}{x_{n-2}^2} \right)^2 .$$

Now by substituting for  $x_{n-1}$  in the term  $\frac{x_{n-1}}{x_{n-2}^2}$  of the last equation we we obtain

$$x_{n+1} = p + \left( \frac{p}{x_{n-1}} + \frac{p}{x_{n-2}^2} + \frac{1}{x_{n-3}^2} \right)^2 . \tag{7}$$

From equation (7) we observe that  $p < x_n < p + (1 + \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{p^2})^2$  for  $n \geq 4$ .

Also from (1) and (7) we have:

$$\begin{cases} x_{n+1} - p = \left( \frac{x_n}{x_{n-1}} \right)^2 \\ x_{n+1} - p = \left( \frac{p}{x_{n-1}} + \frac{p}{x_{n-2}^2} + \frac{1}{x_{n-3}^2} \right)^2 . \end{cases}$$

Consequently

$$\left( \frac{x_n}{x_{n-1}} \right)^2 = \left( \frac{p}{x_{n-1}} + \frac{p}{x_{n-2}^2} + \frac{1}{x_{n-3}^2} \right)^2 ,$$

which implies:

$$x_{n+1} = p + \frac{px_n}{x_{n-1}^2} + \frac{x_n}{x_{n-2}^2} . \tag{8}$$

Replacing  $x_n$  in (8) by  $p + \left( \frac{x_{n-1}}{x_{n-2}} \right)^2$  we obtain the equation

$$x_{n+1} = p + \frac{a^2}{x_{n-1}^2} + \frac{p + x_n}{x_{n-2}^2} . \tag{9}$$

Observe now that every solution of equation (1) is also a solution of equation (9), with initial values  $x_{-2}, x_{-1}$  and  $x_0 = p + \left( \frac{x_0}{x_{-1}} \right)^2$ .

Observe also that it is of the form  $x_{n+1} = f(x_n, x_{n-1}, x_{n-2})$  where :

$$f(u, v, w) = p + \frac{p^2}{v^2} + \frac{p + u}{w^2}$$

**Theorem 2** *If  $p > \sqrt{2}$  then the equilibrium of equation (1) is globally asymptotically stable.*

**Proof.** First we show that every interval  $I$  of the form  $[p, \mathcal{U}]$  where  $\mathcal{U} \geq \frac{p(p^2+p+1)}{(p^2-1)}$  with  $p > 1$  is invariant for the function  $f$ .

Let  $\mathcal{U} > p$  then  $I = [p, \mathcal{U}]$  is invariant if and only if for all  $u, v, w \in I, f(u, v, w) \in I$  that is:

$$p \leq p + \frac{p^2}{v^2} + \frac{p + u}{w^2} \leq \mathcal{U} .$$

As  $p \leq u, v, w \leq \mathcal{U}$  we have that:  $p \leq f(u, v, w) \leq p + 1 + \frac{1}{p} + \frac{\mathcal{U}}{p^2}$ . We also know that if  $\mathcal{U}$  satisfies:  $p + 1 + \frac{1}{p} + \frac{\mathcal{U}}{p^2} \leq \mathcal{U}$  then we have

$$f(u, v, w) \leq \mathcal{U}.$$

It follows that given  $p > 1$  such  $\mathcal{U}$  exists and therefore  $I$  is invariant for  $f$  where  $\mathcal{U} \geq \frac{p(p^2+p+1)}{(p^2-1)}$ . In the following we may assume  $p > 1$  and  $\mathcal{U} = \frac{p(p^2+p+1)}{(p^2-1)}$ , so  $I$  is invariant by  $f$ .

Next, we prove that  $I$  is an attracting interval, that is every solution of equation (8) must enter the interval  $I$ . Observe that given the initial values  $x_{-2}, x_{-1}$  and  $x_0$  for equation (8), we have  $x_n > p$  for  $n \geq 1$ .

Now if  $x_3 \leq \mathcal{U}$  then  $x_n \in [p, \mathcal{U}]$  for all  $n \geq 3$ . Otherwise, from equation (4) given that  $x_{n-2}, x_{n-3} > p$  we have

$$x_n < p + 1 + \frac{1}{p} + \frac{x_{n-1}}{p^2},$$

that is if we set  $A = p + 1 + \frac{1}{p}$

$$x_n < A + \frac{x_{n-1}}{p^2}.$$

Thus by induction we can conclude that

$$x_n < A \frac{1 - (\frac{1}{p^2})^{n-3}}{1 - \frac{1}{p^2}} + \frac{x_3}{(p^2)^{n-3}}. \tag{10}$$

It is straightforward to check that when  $x_3 > \mathcal{U}$  the right hand side of (10) is a decreasing sequence that converges to  $A (\frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{p^2}})$ . This limit is in fact  $\mathcal{U} = \frac{p(p^2+p+1)}{(p^2-1)}$ . It follows that there must exist  $k > 3$  such that:  $a < x_k < \mathcal{U}$  Otherwise  $x_n$  must converge to  $\mathcal{U}$  which is impossible.

Thus we have  $x_{k-1}, x_{k-2} > p$  and  $x_k \leq \mathcal{U}$ , hence  $x_{k+1} \in [a, \mathcal{U}]$  it follows by induction that  $x_n \in [p, \mathcal{U}]$  for  $n \geq k$ .

Consequently every solution of equation (8) must enter the interval  $[p, \mathcal{U}]$ .

Now that we have an invariant and attracting interval we check the conditions of Theorem A.0.5 [3]:

$$\begin{cases} f(M, m, m) = M \\ f(m, M, M) = m \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} M = p + \frac{p^2+p+M}{m^2} \\ m = p + \frac{p^2+p+m}{M^2} \end{cases}.$$

From the second equation we get

$$M^2 = \frac{p^2 + p + m}{m - p}. \tag{11}$$

On the other hand the system is equivalent to:

$$\begin{cases} (M - p)m^2 = p^2 + p + M \\ (m - p)M^2 = p^2 + p + m \end{cases} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} Mm^2 = pm^2 + p^2 + p + M \\ mM^2 = pM^2 + p^2 + p + m \end{cases}$$



By subtracting the second equation from the first we obtain:

$$Mm(m - M) = p(m - M)(m + M) - (m - M)$$

and given that  $m \neq M$  we have:

$$Mm = p(m + M) - 1$$

which implies:

$$M = \frac{pm - 1}{m - p}. \tag{12}$$

Equations (11) and (12) yield

$$\frac{(pm - 1)^2}{(m - p)^2} = \frac{p^2 + p + m}{m - p},$$

which implies:

$$(pm - 1)^2 = (p^2 + p + m)(m - p).$$

This leads to the following quadratic equation:

$$m^2(p^2 - 1) - m(p^2 + 2p) + p^2(p + 1) + 1 = 0,$$

which discriminant is

$$\Delta = (p^2 + 2p)^2 - 4(p^2 - 1)(p^2(p + 1) + 1)$$

and

$$\Delta = -4p^5 - 3p^4 + 8p^3 + 4p^2 + 4 = (\sqrt{2} - p)(4p^4 + (3 + 4\sqrt{2})p^3 + 3\sqrt{2}p^2 + 2p + 2\sqrt{2}).$$

It is clear that when  $a > \sqrt{2}$  there is no real solutions. and when  $p = \sqrt{2}$  there is one unique solution  $m = p + 1 = M$ . Consequently if  $a \geq \sqrt{2}$  the conditions of Theorem A.0.5 [3] or Theorem 1 [5] are fully satisfied and therefore every solution must converge to the unique equilibrium  $(p + 1)$  □

**Conjecture 1** *The equilibrium point  $\bar{x} = p + 1$  of equation (2) is globally asymptotically stable if  $p > 1$ .*

**Remark 1** It could have been easier to prove the fact if we restrict the set of solutions of equation (4) to the ones satisfied by equation (1) as the solutions must oscillate about the equilibrium  $(p + 1)$  that is there exist  $k$  such that:  $p < x_k < p + 1 < \mathcal{U}$ .

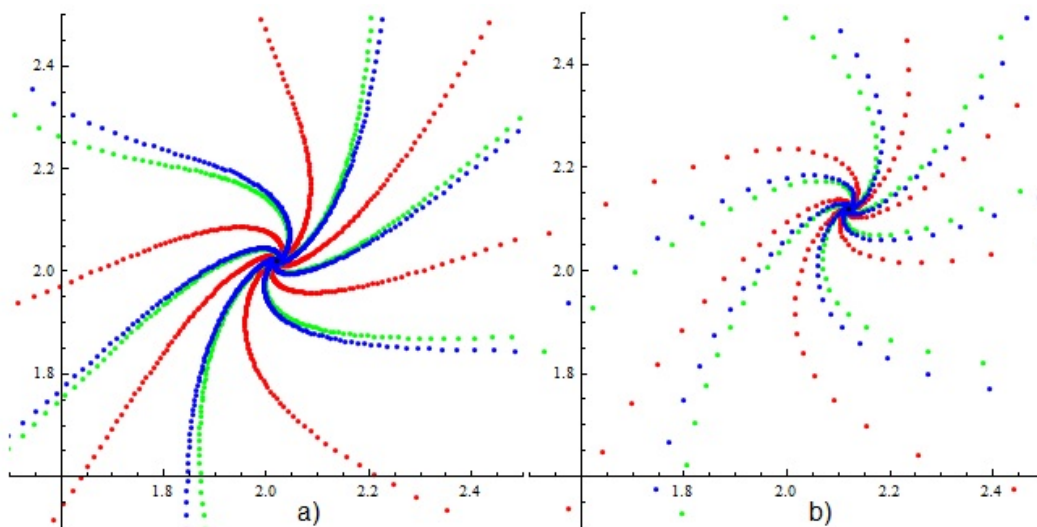


Figure 1: a) Phase diagrams when  $n = 10,000$  and a)  $p = 1.02$  b)  $p = 1.12$

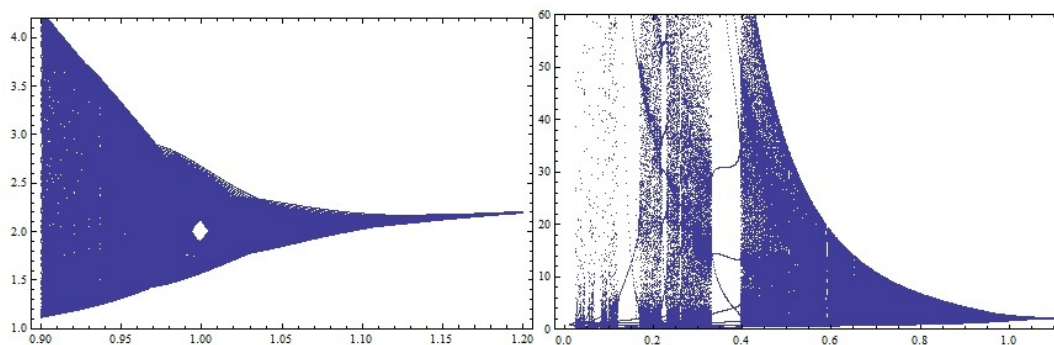


Figure 2: Bifurcation diagrams in  $(p - x)$  plane.

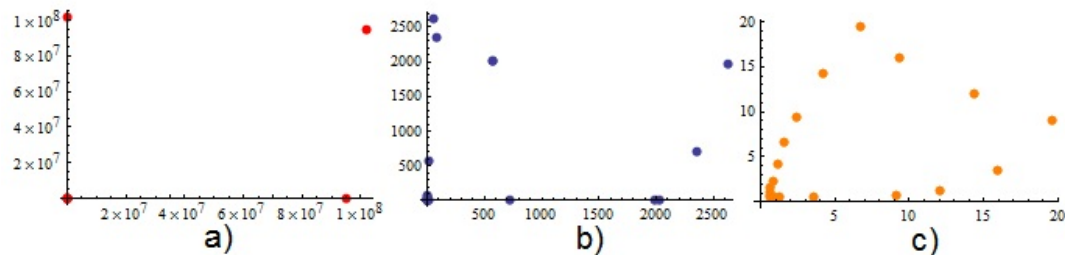


Figure 3: Periodic orbit for a)  $p = 0.01$  b)  $p = 0.15$  c)  $p = 0.5901$  (See Table 2).

### 3 Reduction to the normal form

If we make a change of variable  $y_n = x_n - \bar{x}$ , then the transformed equation is given by

$$y_{n+1} = \frac{(p + y_n + 1)^2}{(p + y_{n-1} + 1)^2} - 1, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots \tag{13}$$

$a$	Period of the sol.	Solution
0.01	8	$\{0.877631, 0.01, 0.0101298, 1.03613, 10462.3, 1.01959 \times 10^8, 9.49713 \times 10^7, 0.877631\}$
0.15	20	$\{574.846, 2023.71, 12.5435, 0.150038, 0.150143, 1.1514, 58.9583, 2622.2, 1978.22, 0.719138, 0.15, 0.193507, 1.81422, 88.0493, 2355.59, 715.88, 0.242359, 0.15, 0.533058, 12.7789\}$
0.5901	19	$\{0.804816, 0.597988, 1.14217, 4.23826, 14.3595, 12.0691, 1.29653, 0.60164, 0.805431, 2.38228, 9.33854, 15.9565, 3.50965, 0.638479, 0.623195, 1.5428, 6.71883, 19.5558, 9.06166\}$

Table 1: Periodic solutions for some values of  $p$ .

Set

$$u_n = y_{n-1} \text{ and } v_n = y_n \text{ for } n = 0, 1, \dots$$

and write Eq.(1) in the equivalent form:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{n+1} &= v_n \\ v_{n+1} &= \frac{(p + v_n + 1)^2}{(p + u_n + 1)^2} - 1. \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

Let  $F$  be the corresponding map defined by:

$$\mathbf{F} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} v \\ \frac{(p+v+1)^2}{(p+u+1)^2} - 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{15}$$

Then  $\mathbf{F}$  has the unique fixed point  $(0, 0)$  and the Jacobian matrix of  $\mathbf{F}$  at  $(0, 0)$  is given by

$$Jac_{\mathbf{F}}(0, 0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\frac{2}{p+1} & \frac{2}{p+1} \end{pmatrix}$$

It is easy to see that

$$\mathbf{F} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\frac{2}{p+1} & \frac{2}{p+1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} + \mathbf{F}_1 \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}, \tag{16}$$

where

$$\mathbf{F}_1 \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{(p+v+1)^2}{(p+u+1)^2} + \frac{2u}{p+1} - \frac{2v}{p+1} - 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The eigenvalues of  $Jac_{\mathbf{F}}(0, 0)$  are  $\mu(p)$  and  $\overline{\mu(p)}$  where

$$\mu(p) = \frac{1 + i\sqrt{2p+1}}{p+1}, \quad |\mu(p)| = \sqrt{\frac{2}{p+1}}.$$

One can prove that for  $p = p_0 = 1$  we obtain  $|\mu(p_0)| = 1$  and

$$\mu(p_0) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2}, \quad \mu^2(p_0) = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2}, \quad \mu^3(p_0) = -1, \quad \mu^4(p_0) = -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{2},$$

from which follows that  $\mu^k(p_0) \neq 1$  for  $k = 1, 2, 3, 4$ . Furthermore, we get

$$\frac{d}{dp}|\mu(p)| = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left(\frac{1}{p+1}\right)^{3/2}, \quad \left. \frac{d|\mu(p)|}{dp} \right|_{p=p_0} = -\frac{1}{4} < 0.$$

The eigenvectors of corresponding to  $\mu(p)$  and  $\overline{\mu(p)}$  are  $\mathbf{q}(p)$  and  $\overline{\mathbf{q}(p)}$ , where

$$\mathbf{q}(p) = \left(\frac{1 - i\sqrt{2p+1}}{p+1}, 1\right)^T.$$

Substituting  $p = p_0 = 1$  into (16) we get

$$\mathbf{F} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = A \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} + \mathbf{G} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix}, \tag{17}$$

where

$$\mathbf{A} = \text{Jac}_{\mathbf{F}}(0,0)|_{p=1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{G} \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{(v+2)^2}{(u+2)^2} + u - v - 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Hence, for  $p = p_0$  system (14) is equivalent to

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_{n+1} \\ v_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{A} \begin{pmatrix} u_n \\ v_n \end{pmatrix} + \mathbf{G} \begin{pmatrix} u_n \\ v_n \end{pmatrix}. \tag{18}$$

Define the basis of  $\mathbb{R}^2$  by  $\Phi = (\mathbf{q}, \bar{\mathbf{q}})$ , where  $\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{q}(p_0)$ , then we can represent  $(u, v)$  as

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} = \Phi \begin{pmatrix} z \\ \bar{z} \end{pmatrix} = (\mathbf{q}z + \bar{\mathbf{q}}\bar{z}) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2}(1+i\sqrt{3})\bar{z} + \frac{1}{2}(1-i\sqrt{3})z \\ \bar{z} + z \end{pmatrix}.$$

By using this, we have

$$\mathbf{G} \left( \Phi \begin{pmatrix} z \\ \bar{z} \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{(\bar{z}+z+2)^2}{\left(\frac{1}{2}(1+i\sqrt{3})\bar{z} + \frac{1}{2}(1-i\sqrt{3})z + 2\right)^2} + \frac{1}{2}(-1+i\sqrt{3})\bar{z} - \frac{1}{2}(1+i\sqrt{3})z - 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{19}$$

Thus we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{g}_{20} &= \left. \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} \mathbf{G} \left( \Phi \begin{pmatrix} z \\ \bar{z} \end{pmatrix} \right) \right|_{z=0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{4}i(\sqrt{3} + 5i) \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathbf{g}_{11} &= \left. \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z \partial \bar{z}} \mathbf{G} \left( \Phi \begin{pmatrix} z \\ \bar{z} \end{pmatrix} \right) \right|_{z=0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathbf{g}_{02} &= \left. \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \bar{z}^2} \mathbf{G} \left( \Phi \begin{pmatrix} z \\ \bar{z} \end{pmatrix} \right) \right|_{z=0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{4}i(\sqrt{3} - 5i) \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{K}_{20} &= (\mu^2 I - A)^{-1} \mathbf{g}_{20} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{4} \\ \frac{5}{8} - \frac{i\sqrt{3}}{8} \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathbf{K}_{11} &= (I - A)^{-1} \mathbf{g}_{11} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathbf{K}_{02} &= (\bar{\mu}^2 I - A)^{-1} \mathbf{g}_{02} = \overline{\mathbf{K}_{20}} \end{aligned} \tag{21}$$

By using  $\mathbf{K}_{20}$ ,  $\mathbf{K}_{11}$  and  $\mathbf{K}_{02}$  we have that

$$\mathbf{g}_{21} = \frac{\partial^3}{\partial z^2 \partial \bar{z}} \mathbf{G} \left( \Phi \left( \frac{z}{z} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{K}_{20} z^2 + \mathbf{K}_{11} z \bar{z} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{K}_{02} \bar{z}^2 \right) \Big|_{z=0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{i\sqrt{3}}{8} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (22)$$

It is easy to see that  $\mathbf{pA} = \mu \mathbf{p}$  and  $\mathbf{pq} = 1$  where

$$\mathbf{p} = \left( \frac{i}{\sqrt{3}}, \frac{1}{6} (3 - i\sqrt{3}) \right)$$

and

$$a(p_0) = \frac{1}{2} \text{Re}(\mathbf{p} \mathbf{g}_{21} \bar{\mu}) = -\frac{1}{16} < 0.$$

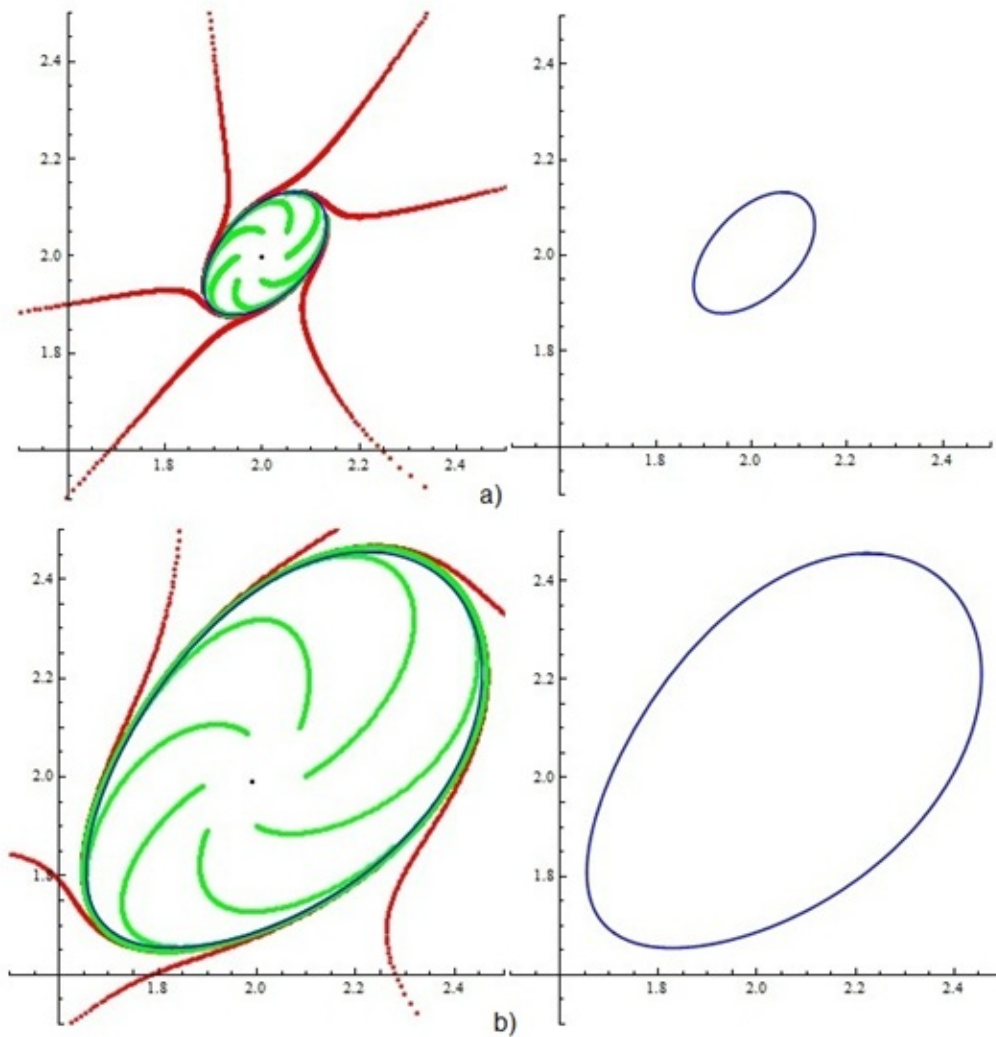


Figure 4: Trajectories and invariant curve for a)  $p = 0.999$  b)  $p = 0.99$ .

Thus we prove the following result:

**Theorem 3** *Let  $\bar{x} = p + 1$ . Then there is a neighborhood  $U$  of the equilibrium point  $\bar{x}$  and a  $\rho > 0$  such that for  $|p - 1| < \rho$  and  $x_0, x_{-1} \in U$ , then  $\omega$ -limit set of solution of Eq(1), with initial condition  $x_0, x_{-1}$  is equilibrium point  $\bar{x}$  if  $p > 1$  and belongs to a closed invariant  $C^1$  curve  $\Gamma(p)$  encircling the equilibrium point  $\bar{x}$  if  $p < 1$ . Furthermore,  $\Gamma(1) = 0$  and invariant curve  $\Gamma(p)$  can be approximated by*

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \approx \begin{pmatrix} p + 1 + 2\sqrt{1-p}(\sqrt{3}\sin\theta + \cos\theta) - (p-1)(\sqrt{3}\sin 2\theta - 2\cos 2\theta + 4) \\ p + 1 + 4\sqrt{1-p}\cos\theta - \frac{1}{2}(p-1)(\sqrt{3}\sin 2\theta + 5\cos 2\theta + 8) \end{pmatrix}$$

**Proof.** The proof follows from above discussion and Theorem 1 and Corollary 1. □

## References

- [1] J. K. Hale and H. Kocak, *Dynamics and bifurcations*. Texts in Applied Mathematics, 3. Springer-Verlag, New York, 1991.
- [2] E. J. Janowski and M. R. S. Kulenović, Attractivity and global stability for linearizable difference equations, *Comput. Math. Appl.* 57 (2009), no. 9, 1592–1607.
- [3] M. R. S. Kulenović and G. Ladas, *Dynamics of Second Order Rational Difference Equations, with Open Problems and Conjectures*, Chapman& Hall/CRC Press, 2001.
- [4] M. R. S. Kulenović and O. Merino, *Discrete Dynamical Systems and Difference Equations with Mathematica*, Chapman and Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, London, 2002.
- [5] M. R. S. Kulenović and O. Merino, A global attractivity result for maps with invariant boxes. *Discrete Contin. Dyn. Syst. Ser. B* 6(2006), 97–110.
- [6] M. R. S. Kulenović, E. Pilav and E. Silić, Naimark-Sacker bifurcation of second order quadratic fractional difference equation, *J. Comp. Math. Sciences*, 4 (2014), 1025–1043.
- [7] Y. Kuznetsov, *Elements of Applied Bifurcation Theory*, Springer, NewYork, 1998.
- [8] C. Robinson, *Stability, Symbolic Dynamics, and Chaos*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1995.
- [9] K. Murakami, 2002, The invariant curve caused by NeimarkSacker bifurcation, *Dynamics of Continuous, Discrete and Impulsive Systems*, 9(2002), 121-132.
- [10] Y. H. Wan, *Computation of the stability condition for the Hopf bifurcation of diffeomorphisms on  $\mathbb{R}^2$* , *SIAM J. Appl. Math.* 34(1) (1978), pp. 167-175.
- [11] S. Wiggins, *Introduction to applied nonlinear dynamical systems and chaos*. Second edition. Texts in Applied Mathematics, 2. Springer-Verlag, New York, 2003.

# Triple reverse order law for Moore-Penrose inverse of operator product \*

Zhiping Xiong<sup>†</sup> Yingying Qin

*School of Mathematics and Computational Science, Wuyi University,  
Jiangmen 529020, P. R. China*

April 14, 2016

## Abstract

In this paper, we study the reverse order law for the Moore-Penrose inverse of an operator product  $T_1T_2T_3$ . In particular, using the matrix form of a bounded linear operator we derive some necessary and sufficient conditions for the reverse order law  $(T_1T_2T_3)^\dagger = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger$ . Moreover, some finite dimensional results are extended to infinite dimensional settings.

**Keywords:** Moore-Penrose inverse; Reverse order law; Bounded linear operator; Operator product; Hilbert space.

**AMS(MOS) Subject Classifications:** 47A05; 15A09; 15A24.

## 1 Introduction

Throughout this paper, “an operator” means “a bounded linear operator over Hilbert space”. Let  $\mathbb{H}$ ,  $\mathbb{I}$ ,  $\mathbb{J}$  and  $\mathbb{K}$  denote arbitrary Hilbert spaces. We use  $L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{K})$  to denote the set of all bounded linear operators from  $\mathbb{H}$  to  $\mathbb{K}$ . Especially,  $L(\mathbb{H})=L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{H})$ . For an operator  $T \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{K})$ , the symbols  $R(T)$ ,  $N(T)$  and  $T^*$  denote the range, the null-space and the adjoint of  $T$ , respectively.  $I$  denotes the unit operator over Hilbert space and  $O$  is the zero operator over Hilbert space. An operator  $T \in L(\mathbb{H})$  is a Hermitian operator if and only if  $T^* = T$ . An operator  $T \in L(\mathbb{H})$  is an invertible operator if and only if there is a operator  $U \in L(\mathbb{H})$ , such that  $TU = UT = I$ . If such operator  $U$  exists, we denotes it by  $T^{-1}$ .

Recall that an operator  $X \in L(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{H})$  is called the Moore-Penrose inverse of  $T \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{K})$ , if  $X$  satisfies the following four operator equations [16],

$$(1) TXT = T, \quad (2) XTX = X, \quad (3) (TX)^* = TX, \quad (4) (XT)^* = XT.$$

---

\*This work was supported by the NSFC (Grant No: 11301397) and the Guangdong Natural Science Fund of China (Grant No: 2014A030313625) and the Training plan for the Outstanding Young Teachers in Higher Education of Guangdong (Grant No: SYq2014002) and the Student Innovation Training Program of Guangdong province, P.R.China (No. 201511349071).

<sup>†</sup>Corresponding author. E-mail: xzpwhere@163.com

If such operator  $X$  exists then it is unique and is denoted by  $T^\dagger$ . It is well known that the Moore-Penrose inverse of  $T$  exists if and only if  $R(T)$  is closed [5, 8].

For a subset  $\{i, j, \dots, k\}$  of the set  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ , the set of operators satisfying the equations  $(i), (j), \dots, (k)$  from among equations (1)-(4) is denoted by  $T\{i, j, \dots, k\}$ . An operator in  $T\{i, j, \dots, k\}$  is called an  $\{i, j, \dots, k\}$ -inverse of  $T$  and is denoted by  $T^{(i, j, \dots, k)}$ . For example, an operator  $X$  of the set  $T\{1\}$  is called a  $\{1\}$ -inverse or a  $g$ -inverse of  $T$  and denoted by  $X = T^{(1)}$ . One usually denotes any  $\{1, 3\}$ -inverse of the set  $T\{1, 3\}$  as  $T^{(1,3)}$  which is also called a least squares  $g$ -inverse of  $T$ . Any  $\{1, 4\}$ -inverse of the set  $T\{1, 4\}$  is denoted by  $T^{(1,4)}$  which is also called a minimum norm  $g$ -inverse of  $T$ . The unique  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ -inverse of  $T$  is the Moore-Penrose inverse of  $T$ . We refer the reader to [1, 14] for basic results on the generalized inverses of bounded linear operators.

If  $s$  is a semigroup with the unit 1 and if  $a_i \in s, i = 1, 2, 3$ , are invertible, then the equality  $(a_1 a_2 a_3)^{-1} = a_3^{-1} a_2^{-1} a_1^{-1}$  is called the reverse order law for the ordinary inverse. Let  $T_i, i = 1, 2, 3$ , be three operators over Hilbert space such that the product  $T_1 T_2 T_3$  is meaningful. If each of the three operators is invertible, then the product  $T_1 T_2 T_3$  is invertible too, and the ordinary inverse of  $T_1 T_2 T_3$  satisfies the reverse order law  $(T_1 T_2 T_3)^{-1} = T_3^{-1} T_2^{-1} T_1^{-1}$ . However, this so-called reverse order law is not necessarily true for other kind generalized inverses. An interesting problem is, for given  $\{i, j, \dots, k\}$ -inverses and operators  $T_i, i = 1, 2, 3$ , with  $T_1 T_2 T_3$  is meaningful, when

$$(T_1 T_2 T_3)\{i, j, \dots, k\} = T_3\{i, j, \dots, k\} T_2\{i, j, \dots, k\} T_1\{i, j, \dots, k\}?$$

The reverse order laws for generalized inverses of operator product yield a class of interesting problems that are fundamental in the theory of generalized inverses of operator, see [1, 10, 21]. Theory and computations of the reverse order laws for generalized inverses of operator product are important subjects in many branches of applied science, such as nonlinear control theory, operator theory, operator algebra, global analysis and approximation theory, see [1, 6, 20, 21]. Suppose  $T_i, i = 1, 2, 3$ , and  $\{i, j, \dots, k\}$  are bounded linear operators over Hilbert space. The least squares technique (LS):

$$\min_Y \|(T_1 T_2 T_3)Y\|_2,$$

is used in many practical scientific problems. Any solution  $Y$  of the above LS problem can be expressed as  $Y = (T_1 T_2 T_3)^{(1,3)}$ . If the LS problem is consistent, then the minimum norm solution  $Y$  has the form  $Y = (T_1 T_2 T_3)^{(1,4)}$ . The unique minimal norm least square solution  $Y$  of the LS problem is  $Y = (T_1 T_2 T_3)^\dagger$ . One such problem concerned with the above LS problem is, under what conditions,  $(T_1 T_2 T_3)^{(i, j, \dots, k)} = T_3^{(i, j, \dots, k)} T_2^{(i, j, \dots, k)} T_1^{(i, j, \dots, k)}$ ?

Since the middle 1960s, the reverse order law for generalized inverses have attracted considerable attention, and a significant number of paper treat the sufficient or equivalent conditions such that the reverse order law holds in some sense. It is a classical result of Greville [10], that  $(AB)^\dagger = B^\dagger A^\dagger$  if and only if  $R(A^*AB) \subseteq R(B)$  and  $R(BB^*A^*) \subseteq R(A^*)$ , in this case when  $A$  and  $B$  are complex matrices. This result is extended to bounded linear operators on Hilbert space, by Bouldin [2] and Izumino [12]. In [13] the reverse order law for the Moore-Penrose



inverse is proved in rings with involutions. In [4] D.S.Cvetkovic-IIic studied this reverse order law in  $C^*$ -algebra. Then, in [7], the reverse order law for the Moore-Penrose inverse is obtained as a consequence of some set equalities. The reader can find some interesting and related results in [7, 15, 17, 18, 19, 22].

In 1986, R.E.Hartwig [11] first discussed the reverse order law for Moore-Penrose inverse of three matrices product. In the paper [9] D.S. Djordjevic et al., extended the results of [11] to the bounded linear operators on Hilbert space, using some algebraic method. In this paper, we revisit this reverse order law by applying the technique of matrix form of bounded linear operators [3]. Let  $T_1 \in L(\mathbb{J}, \mathbb{K})$ ,  $T_2 \in L(\mathbb{I}, \mathbb{J})$  and  $T_3 \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{I})$  such that  $T_1, T_2, T_3$  and  $T_1T_2T_3$  have closed ranges. Then using the technique of matrix form of a bounded linear operator [3] and the solving operator equations, we will revisit the following reverse order law  $(T_1T_2T_3)^\dagger = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger$ . Some new simpler equivalent conditions for this reverse order law are obtained.

We first mention the following results, which will be used in this paper.

**Lemma 1.1.** [3, 7, 8] *Let  $T \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{K})$  have a closed range. Let  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  be closed and mutually orthogonal subspace of  $\mathbb{H}$ , such that  $H_1 \oplus H_2 = \mathbb{H}$ . Let  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  be closed and mutually orthogonal subspace of  $\mathbb{K}$ , such that  $\mathbb{K} = K_1 \oplus K_2$ . Then the operator  $T$  has the following matrix representations with respect to the orthogonal sums of subspaces  $\mathbb{H} = H_1 \oplus H_2 = R(T^*) \oplus N(T)$  and  $\mathbb{K} = K_1 \oplus K_2 = R(T) \oplus N(T^*)$ :*

$$(1) \quad T = \begin{pmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} H_1 \\ H_2 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T) \\ N(T^*) \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } T^\dagger = \begin{pmatrix} T_{11}^* E^{-1} & O \\ T_{12}^* E^{-1} & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T) \\ N(T^*) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} H_1 \\ H_2 \end{pmatrix},$$

*where  $E = T_{11}T_{11}^* + T_{12}T_{12}^*$  is invertible on  $R(T)$ ;*

$$(2) \quad T = \begin{pmatrix} T_{11} & O \\ T_{21} & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T^*) \\ N(T) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} K_1 \\ K_2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } T^\dagger = \begin{pmatrix} F^{-1}T_{11}^* & F^{-1}T_{12}^* \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} K_1 \\ K_2 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T^*) \\ N(T) \end{pmatrix},$$

*where  $F = T_{11}^*T_{11} + T_{21}^*T_{21}$  is invertible on  $R(T^*)$ ;*

$$(3) \quad T = \begin{pmatrix} T_{11} & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T^*) \\ N(T) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T) \\ N(T^*) \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } T^\dagger = \begin{pmatrix} T_{11}^{-1} & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T) \\ N(T^*) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T^*) \\ N(T) \end{pmatrix},$$

*where  $T_{11}$  is invertible.*

**Lemma 1.2.** [1] *Let  $T \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{K})$  and  $N \in L(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{H})$  have closed ranges. Then,*

$$(1) \quad TT^\dagger N = N \Leftrightarrow R(N) \subseteq R(T);$$

$$(2) \quad NT^\dagger T = N \Leftrightarrow R(N^*) \subseteq R(T^*).$$

## 2 The triple reverse order law for Moore-Penrose inverse of operator product

Let  $T_1 \in L(\mathbb{J}, \mathbb{K})$ ,  $T_2 \in L(\mathbb{I}, \mathbb{J})$  and  $T_3 \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{I})$ , such that  $T_1, T_2, T_3$  and  $T_1T_2T_3$  have closed ranges. In this section, we will give necessary and sufficient conditions for the triple reverse

order law of the Moore-Penrose inverse of the operator product  $T_1T_2T_3$ . First of all let us define

$$E = T_1^\dagger T_1, \quad F = T_3 T_3^\dagger, \quad P = ET_2F, \quad Q = FT_2^\dagger E, \quad M = T_1T_2T_3, \quad G = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger. \quad (2.1)$$

In terms of these, we get the following results.

**Theorem 2.1.** *Let  $T_1 \in L(\mathbb{J}, \mathbb{K})$ ,  $T_2 \in L(\mathbb{I}, \mathbb{J})$  and  $T_3 \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{I})$ , such that  $T_1, T_2, T_3$  and  $T_1T_2T_3$  have closed ranges. Then the following statements are equivalent:*

- (1)  $(T_1T_2T_3)^\dagger = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger$ ;
- (2)  $Q \in P\{1, 2\}$ , and  $T_1^* T_1 P Q, Q P T_3 T_3^*$  are two Hermitian operators;
- (3)  $MGM = G$ , and  $GMG = G$ , and  $(MG)^* = MG$ , and  $(GM)^* = GM$ .

**Proof.** (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (3): Obvious.

Next, we will prove (2)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (3). From Lemma 1.1, we know that the operators  $T_1, T_2, T_3, T_1T_2T_3$  and  $T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger$  have the following matrix form with respect to the orthogonal sum of subspaces:

$$T_1 = \begin{pmatrix} T_1^{11} & T_1^{12} \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T_2) \\ N(T_2^*) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T_1) \\ N(T_1^*) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.2)$$

$$T_1^\dagger = \begin{pmatrix} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} & O \\ (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T_1) \\ N(T_1^*) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T_2) \\ N(T_2^*) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.3)$$

where  $D = T_1^{11}(T_1^{11})^* + T_1^{12}(T_1^{12})^*$  is invertible on  $R(T_1)$ .

$$T_2 = \begin{pmatrix} T_2^{11} & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T_2^*) \\ N(T_2) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T_2) \\ N(T_2^*) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.4)$$

$$T_2^\dagger = \begin{pmatrix} (T_2^{11})^{-1} & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T_2) \\ N(T_2^*) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T_2^*) \\ N(T_2) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.5)$$

where  $T_2^{11}$  is invertible.

$$T_3 = \begin{pmatrix} T_3^{11} & O \\ T_3^{21} & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T_3^*) \\ N(T_3) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T_2^*) \\ N(T_2) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.6)$$

$$T_3^\dagger = \begin{pmatrix} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^* & S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^* \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T_2^*) \\ N(T_2) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T_3^*) \\ N(T_3) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (2.7)$$

where  $S = (T_3^{11})^* T_3^{11} + (T_3^{21})^* T_3^{21}$  is invertible on  $R(T_3^*)$ .

Let  $M = T_1T_2T_3$  and  $G = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger$ , then from (2.2)~(2.7), we have

$$M = T_1T_2T_3 = \begin{pmatrix} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T_3^*) \\ N(T_3) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T_1) \\ N(T_1^*) \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.8)$$

and

$$G = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger = \begin{pmatrix} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1} & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} R(T_1) \\ N(T_1^*) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} R(T_3^*) \\ N(T_3) \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.9)$$

According to the formulas (2.1)~(2.7), we have

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11} & T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{12} \\ T_3^{21}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11} & T_3^{21}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{12} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.10)$$

and

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} (T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^* & (T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^* \\ (T_1^{12})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^* & (T_1^{12})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^* \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.11)$$

From (2.2), (2.6), (2.10) and (2.11), we get

$$T_1^*T_1PQ = \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 \\ 21 & 22 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ where} \quad (2.12)$$

$$\begin{aligned} 11 &= (T_1^{11})^*T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}, \\ 12 &= (T_1^{11})^*T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{12}, \\ 21 &= (T_1^{12})^*T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{21}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}, \\ 22 &= (T_1^{12})^*T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{21}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{12}, \end{aligned}$$

and

$$QP T_3 T_3^* = \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 \\ 21 & 22 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ where} \quad (2.13)$$

$$\begin{aligned} 11 &= T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}(T_3^{11})^*, \\ 12 &= T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}(T_3^{21})^*, \\ 21 &= T_3^{21}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}(T_3^{11})^*, \\ 22 &= T_3^{21}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}(T_3^{21})^*. \end{aligned}$$

Combining (2.8) with (2.9), we know that  $G = M^\dagger$  (i.e.  $T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger = (T_1 T_2 T_3)^\dagger$ ), if and only if

$$(I) MGM = M, \quad (II) GMG = G, \quad (III) (MG)^* = MG, \quad (IV) (GM)^* = GM. \quad (2.14)$$

From the formulas (2.10)~(2.13), we know that the statement (2) of Theorem 2.1 can be rewritten as

$$(a) PQP = P, \quad (b) QPQ = Q, \quad (c) (T_1^*T_1PQ)^* = T_1^*T_1PQ, \quad (d) (QP T_3 T_3^*)^* = QP T_3 T_3^*. \quad (2.15)$$

In the rest of this section, we will prove (2.14) is equivalent to (2.15). That is the conditions (2) in Theorem 2.1 is equal to the conditions (3) in Theorem 2.1.

(I) $\Leftrightarrow$ (a): From (2.8) and (2.9), we have

$$\begin{aligned} MGM &= (T_1 T_2 T_3)(T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger)(T_1 T_2 T_3) \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.16)$$

Then from (2.8) and (2.16), we know that the inclusion  $MGM = M$  is equivalent to

$$T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} = T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11}. \quad (2.17)$$

By the formulas (2.10) and (2.11), we have

$$PQP = \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 \\ 21 & 22 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ where} \quad (2.18)$$

$$\begin{aligned} 11 &= (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*, \\ 12 &= (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^*, \\ 21 &= (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*, \\ 22 &= (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^*. \end{aligned}$$

From (2.11) and (2.18), we know that the inclusion  $PQP = P$  is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} &(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^* \\ &= (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*, \end{aligned} \quad (2.19)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^* \\ &= (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^*, \end{aligned} \quad (2.20)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &(T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^* \\ &= (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*, \end{aligned} \quad (2.21)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &(T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^* \\ &= (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^*. \end{aligned} \quad (2.22)$$

If the equation (2.17) holds, we have the equations (2.19)~(2.22) hold too. That is (I) $\Rightarrow$ (a).

On the other hand, if the equations (2.19)~(2.22) hold, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &T_1^{11}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^* T_3^{11} \\ &= T_1^{11}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^* T_3^{11}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.23)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{11}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^*T_3^{21} \\ = & T_1^{11}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^*T_3^{21}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.24)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{12}(T_1^{12})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*T_3^{11} \\ = & T_1^{12}(T_1^{12})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*T_3^{11}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.25)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{12}(T_1^{12})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^*T_3^{21} \\ = & T_1^{12}(T_1^{12})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{21})^*T_3^{21}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.26)$$

Combining (2.23), (2.24) with the definition of  $S$  in (2.7), we have

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{11}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11} \\ = & T_1^{11}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.27)$$

Combining (2.25), (2.26) with the definition of  $D$  in (2.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{12}(T_1^{12})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11} \\ = & T_1^{12}(T_1^{12})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.28)$$

From the results in (2.27) and (2.28), we have

$$T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11} = T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}. \quad (2.29)$$

That is (a) $\Rightarrow$ (I).

(II) $\Leftrightarrow$ (b): With the same method of the proof of (I) $\Leftrightarrow$ (a), the condition  $GMG = G$  is easily seen to be equivalent to  $QPQ = Q$ .

(III) $\Leftrightarrow$ (c): From (2.8) and (2.9), we have

$$MG = (T_1T_2T_3)(T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger) = \begin{pmatrix} T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1} & O \\ O & O \end{pmatrix}. \quad (2.30)$$

Since  $S$  and  $D$  are Hermitian operators, then the inclusion  $(MG)^* = MG$  is equivalent to

$$T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1} = D^{-1}T_1^{11}((T_2^{11})^{-1})^*T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^*(T_1^{11})^*. \quad (2.31)$$

By the formulas (2.12), we have that the inclusion  $(T_1^*T_1PQ)^* = T_1^*T_1PQ$  is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} & (T_1^{11})^*T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11} \\ = & (T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}((T_2^{11})^{-1})^*T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^*(T_1^{11})^*T_1^{11}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.32)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & (T_1^{11})^*T_1^{11}T_2^{11}T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^{-1}(T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{12} \\ = & (T_1^{11})^*D^{-1}T_1^{11}((T_2^{11})^{-1})^*T_3^{11}S^{-1}(T_3^{11})^*(T_2^{11})^*(T_1^{11})^*T_1^{12}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.33)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & (T_1^{12})^* T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} \\ = & (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{11}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.34)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & (T_1^{12})^* T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{12} \\ = & (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{12}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.35)$$

If the equation (2.31) holds, we have the equations (2.32)~(2.35) hold too. That is (III)⇒(c).

On the other hand, if the equations (2.32)~(2.35) hold, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* \\ = & T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^*, \end{aligned} \quad (2.36)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^* \\ = & T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^*, \end{aligned} \quad (2.37)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^* T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* \\ = & T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^*, \end{aligned} \quad (2.38)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^* T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^* \\ = & T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^*. \end{aligned} \quad (2.39)$$

Combining (2.36), (2.37) with the definition of  $D = T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* + T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^*$  in (2.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* \\ = & T_1^{11} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* D. \end{aligned} \quad (2.40)$$

Combining (2.38), (2.39) with the definition of  $D$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} & T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^* T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* \\ = & T_1^{12} (T_1^{12})^* D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* D. \end{aligned} \quad (2.41)$$

Finally, from (2.40), (2.41) and the definition of  $D$ , we have

$$DT_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* = T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^* D. \quad (2.42)$$

Since  $D = (T_1^{11})(T_1^{11})^* + (T_1^{12})(T_1^{12})^*$  is invertible on  $R(T_1)$ , then (2.42) can be rewritten as

$$T_1^{11} T_2^{11} T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^{-1} (T_1^{11})^* D^{-1} = D^{-1} T_1^{11} ((T_2^{11})^{-1})^* T_3^{11} S^{-1} (T_3^{11})^* (T_2^{11})^* (T_1^{11})^*. \quad (2.43)$$

That is (c)⇒(III).

(IV)⇔(d): With the same method of the proof of (III)⇔(c), we can get the result that the condition  $(GM)^* = GM$  is equivalent to  $(QPT_3 T_3^*)^* = QPT_3 T_3^*$  without the proof.

From the above proof, the formulas (2.14) is equivalent to (2.15). We then complete the proof of the theorem. ■

Be the same as (2.1),  $Q = FT_2^\dagger E$  and  $P = ET_2 F$ , next we will derive some other equivalent conditions for the triple reverse order law  $(T_1 T_2 T_3)^\dagger = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger$ .

**Theorem 2.2.** *Let  $T_1 \in L(\mathbb{J}, \mathbb{K})$ ,  $T_2 \in L(\mathbb{I}, \mathbb{J})$  and  $T_3 \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{I})$ , such that  $T_1, T_2, T_3$  and  $T_1 T_2 T_3$  have closed ranges. Then the following statements are equivalent:*

- (1)  $(T_1 T_2 T_3)^\dagger = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger$ ;
- (2)  $Q \in P\{1, 2\}$  and  $T_1^* T_1 P Q, Q P T_3 T_3^*$  are two Hermitian operators;
- (3)  $Q \in P\{1\}$  and  $R(T_1^* T_1 P) = R(Q^*)$  and  $R(T_3 T_3^* P^*) = R(Q)$ ;
- (4)  $(PQ)^2 = PQ$  and  $R(T_1^* T_1 P) = R(Q^*)$  and  $R(T_3 T_3^* P^*) = R(Q)$ .

**Proof.** (1) $\Leftrightarrow$ (2): By the results in Theorem 2.1, we know that (1) $\Leftrightarrow$ (2).

(2) $\Rightarrow$ (3): According to the definitions of the generalized inverses of operators, we have

$$Q \in P\{1, 2\} \Rightarrow Q \in P\{1\}. \tag{2.44}$$

By the definitions of the ranges of operators and the formula (2.44), we have

$$R(T_1^* T_1 P) = R(T_1^* T_1 P Q P) \subseteq R(T_1^* T_1 P Q) \subseteq R(T_1^* T_1 P). \tag{2.45}$$

That is

$$R(T_1^* T_1 P) = R(T_1^* T_1 P Q). \tag{2.46}$$

If  $T_1^* T_1 P Q$  is a Hermitian operator, then

$$R(T_1^* T_1 P) = R(T_1^* T_1 P Q) = R(Q^* P^* T_1^\dagger T_1) = R(Q^* P^* T_1^\dagger T_1). \tag{2.47}$$

Since  $Q^* P^* T_1^\dagger T_1 = Q^* P^*$ , then from (2.44) and (2.47), we have

$$R(T_1^* T_1 P) = R(Q^* P^* T_1^\dagger T_1) = R(Q^* P^*) = R(Q^*). \tag{2.48}$$

Similarly, if  $Q P T_3 T_3^*$  is a Hermitian operator, we have

$$R(T_3 T_3^* P^*) = R(T_3^* T_3 P^* Q^*) = R(Q P T_3 T_3^*) = R(Q P) = R(Q). \tag{2.49}$$

Combining (2.44), (2.48) with (2.49), we have the result (2) $\Rightarrow$ (3).

(3) $\Rightarrow$ (4): Obvious.

(4) $\Rightarrow$ (2): Firstly, we will prove that if the statement (4) in Theorem 2.2 is true, then  $PQP = P$ . Since  $P = P T_3 T_3^\dagger$  and  $R(T_3 T_3^* P^*) = R(Q)$ , then we have

$$R(P) = R(P T_3) = R(P T_3 T_3^* P^*) = R(P Q). \tag{2.50}$$

Combining (2.50) with  $(PQ)^2 = PQ$ , we have

$$PQP = P \text{ and } (QP)^2 = QP. \tag{2.51}$$

Secondly, we will prove that if the statement (4) in Theorem 2.2 is true, then  $QPQ = Q$ . From the statement (4) in Theorem 2.2 and the definitions of  $Q$  and  $P$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} R(Q^*) &= R(T_1^*T_1P) = R(T_1^*T_1PP^*T_1^*T_1) = R(T_1^*T_1PP^*T_1^\dagger T_1) \\ &= R(T_1^*T_1PP^*) = R(Q^*P^*). \end{aligned} \tag{2.52}$$

Combining (2.52) with  $(Q^*P^*)^2 = Q^*P^*$ , we have

$$Q^*P^*Q^* = Q^* \text{ i.e. } QPQ = Q. \tag{2.53}$$

Thirdly, we will prove that if the statement (4) in Theorem 2.2 is true, then  $T_1^*T_1PQ$  is a Hermitian operator. Since  $R(T_1^*T_1P) = R(Q^*)$  and  $R(Q^*P^*) = R(Q^*)$ , then we have

$$Q^*P^*T_1^*T_1P = T_1^*T_1P. \tag{2.54}$$

From (2.54), we have

$$Q^*P^*T_1^*T_1PQ = T_1^*T_1PQ = (T_1^*T_1PQ)^*. \tag{2.55}$$

Fourthly, we will prove that if the statement (4) in Theorem 2.2 is true, then  $QPT_3T_3^*$  is a Hermitian operator. Since  $R(T_3T_3^*P^*) = R(Q)$  and  $QPQ = Q$ , then we have

$$R(QP) = R(Q) \text{ and } QPT_3T_3^*P^* = T_3T_3^*P^*. \tag{2.56}$$

From (2.56), we have

$$QPT_3T_3^*P^*Q^* = T_3T_3^*P^*Q^* = (QPT_3T_3^*)^* = QPT_3T_3^*. \tag{2.57}$$

Combining the formulas (2.51), (2.53), (2.55) with (2.57), we immediately obtain the result (4) $\Rightarrow$ (2). We then complete the proof of the theorem. ■

Let us now see how some of the special cases come out of the conditions of Theorem 2.2.

**Corollary 2.1.** *Let  $T_1 \in L(\mathbb{J}, \mathbb{K})$ ,  $T_2 \in L(\mathbb{I}, \mathbb{J})$  and  $T_3 \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{I})$ , such that  $T_1$ ,  $T_2$ ,  $T_3$  and  $T_1T_2T_3$  have closed ranges. If  $R(T_2) \subseteq R(T_1^*)$  and  $R(T_2^*) \subseteq R(T_3)$ , then*

$$(T_1T_2T_3)^\dagger = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger \Leftrightarrow R(T_1^*T_1T_2) \subseteq R(T_2) \text{ and } R(T_3T_3^*T_2^*) \subseteq R(T_2^*).$$

**Proof.** According to the hypothesis  $R(T_2) \subseteq R(T_1^*)$  and  $R(T_2^*) \subseteq R(T_3)$  and the results in Lemma 1.2, we have

$$Q = FT_2^\dagger E = T_2^\dagger, \quad P = ET_2F = T_2. \tag{2.58}$$



$\Rightarrow$ : If  $(T_1T_2T_3)^\dagger = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger$ , then from Theorem 2.1 and Theorem 2.2, we have  $(PQ)^2 = PQ$  and  $R(T_1^*T_1P) = R(Q^*)$  and  $R(T_3T_3^*P^*) = R(Q)$ . So, we get

$$R(T_1^*T_1T_2) = R((T_2^\dagger)^*) \subseteq R(T_2) \text{ and } R(T_3T_3^*T_2^*) = R(T_2^\dagger) \subseteq R(T_2^*). \quad (2.59)$$

$\Leftarrow$ : From (2.58), we have  $PQP = P$  and  $QPQ = Q$ . That is

$$Q \in P\{1, 2\}. \quad (2.60)$$

By (2.58), we also have

$$T_1^*T_1PQ = T_1^*T_1T_2T_2^\dagger \text{ and } QPT_3T_3^* = T_2^\dagger T_2T_3T_3^*. \quad (2.61)$$

Combining the hypothesis  $R(T_1^*T_1T_2) \subseteq R(T_2)$  with results in Lemma 1.2, we have

$$T_2T_2^\dagger T_1T_1^*T_2T_2^\dagger = T_1T_1^*T_2T_2^\dagger = (T_1T_1^*T_2T_2^\dagger)^*. \quad (2.62)$$

Combining the hypothesis  $R(T_3T_3^*T_2) \subseteq R(T_2^*)$  with results in Lemma 1.2, we have

$$T_2^\dagger T_2T_3T_3^*T_2^*(T_2^\dagger)^\dagger = T_3T_3^*T_2^*(T_2^*)^\dagger = (T_3T_3^*T_2^*(T_2^*)^\dagger)^* = T_2^\dagger T_2T_3T_3^* = (T_2^\dagger T_2T_3T_3^*)^*. \quad (2.63)$$

According to the formulas (2.59), (2.60), (2.62), (2.63) and the statement (2) in Theorem 2.2, we immediately obtain the results of Corollary 2.1. ■

**Corollary 2.2.** *Let  $T_1 \in L(\mathbb{J}, \mathbb{K})$ ,  $T_2 \in L(\mathbb{I}, \mathbb{J})$  and  $T_3 \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{I})$ , such that  $T_2$  and  $T_1T_2T_3$  have closed ranges. If  $T_1^\dagger T_1 = I$  and  $T_3T_3^\dagger = I$  (i.e.  $T_1$  and  $T_3$  are invertible operators), then*

$$(T_1T_2T_3)^\dagger = T_3^{-1}T_2^\dagger T_1^{-1} \Leftrightarrow R(T_1^*T_1T_2) \subseteq R(T_2) \text{ and } R(T_3T_3^*T_2^*) \subseteq R(T_2^*).$$

**Corollary 2.3.** *Let  $T_1 \in L(\mathbb{J}, \mathbb{K})$ ,  $T_2 \in L(\mathbb{I}, \mathbb{J})$  and  $T_3 \in L(\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{I})$ , such that  $T_1, T_2, T_3, T_1T_2T_3$  and  $T_1^\dagger T_1T_2T_3T_3^\dagger$  have closed ranges. If  $T_1^\dagger T_1 = T_1$  and  $T_3T_3^\dagger = T_3$ , then*

$$(T_1T_2T_3)^\dagger = T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger \Leftrightarrow T_3T_3^\dagger T_2^\dagger T_1^\dagger T_1 = (T_1^\dagger T_1T_2T_3T_3^\dagger)^\dagger.$$

## References

- [1] A. Ben-Israel, and T. N. E. Greville. *Generalized Inverse: Theory and Applications*. Wiley-Interscience, 1974; 2nd Edition, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2002.
- [2] R. H. Boulidin. The pseudo-inverse of a product. *SIAM J. Appl. Math.*, 24 (1973) 489-495.
- [3] J. B. Conway. *A course in functional analysis*. Springer-Verlag, 1990.
- [4] D. Cvetkovic-Ilic and R. Harte. Reverse order laws in  $C^*$ -algebras. *Linear Algebra Appl.*, 434 (2011) 1388-1394.

- [5] S. R. Caradus. Generalized inverses and operator theory. *Queen's paper in pure and applied mathematics, Queen's University, Kingston, Ontario, 1978.*
- [6] O. Christensen. Operators with closed range, pseudo inverses and perturbation of frames for a subspace. *Canad. Math. Bull.*, 42 (1999) 37-45.
- [7] D.S.Djordjevic. Furthuer results on the reverse order law for generalized inverses. *SIAM J. Matrix. Anal. Appl.*, 29 (2007) 1242-1246.
- [8] D. S. Djordjevic and N. Č. Dinčić. Reverse order law for the Moore-Penrose inverse. *J. Math. Anal. Appl.*, 36 (2010) 252-261.
- [9] N. Č. Dinčić and D. S. Djordjevic. Hartwigs triple reverse order law revisited. *Linear and Multilinear Algebra.*, 62 (2014) 918-924.
- [10] T. N. E. Greville. Note on the generalized inverse of a matrix product. *SIAM Review*, 8 (1966) 518-521.
- [11] R. E. Hartwig. The reverse order law revisited. *Linear Algebra Appl.*, 76 (1986) 241-246.
- [12] S. Izumino. The product of operators with closed range and an extension of the reverse order law. *Tohoku Math. J.*, 34 (1982) 43-52.
- [13] J. J. Koliha, D. S. Djordjevic and D. Cvetkovic-IIic. Moore-Penrose inverse in rings with involution. *Linear Algebra Appl.*, 426 (2007) 371-381.
- [14] M. Z. Nashed. Inner, outer and generalized inverses in Banach and Hilbert spaces. *Numer. Funct. Anal. Optim.*, 9 (1987) 261-325.
- [15] A. R. D. Pierro and M. Wei. Reverse order laws for reflexive generalized inverse of products of matrices. *Linear Algebra Appl.*, 277 (1998) 299-311.
- [16] R. Penrose. A generalized inverse for matrix. *Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.*, 51 (1955) 406-413.
- [17] N. Shinozaki and M. Sibuya. The reverse order law  $(AB^-) = B^-A^-$ . *Linear Algebra Appl.*, 9 (1974) 29-40.
- [18] W. Sun and Y. Wei. Inverse order rule for weighted generalized inverse. *SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl.*, 19 (1998) 772-775.
- [19] Y. Tian. Reverse order laws for the generalized inverse of multiple matrix products. *Linear Algebra Appl.*, 211 (1994) 85-100.
- [20] J. Wang, Z. Li and Y. Xue. Perturbation analysis for the minimal norm solution of a consistent operator equation in Banach spaces. *J. East China Norm Univ.*, 1 (2009) 48-52.
- [21] Y. Xue. An new characterization of the reduced minimum modulus of an operator on Banach spaces. *Publ. Math. Debrecen.*, 72 (2008) 155-166.
- [22] Z. Xiong and B. Zheng. The reverse order laws for  $\{1, 2, 3\}$ - and  $\{1, 2, 4\}$ -inverses of a two matrix product. *Appl. Math. Let.*, 21 (2008) 649-655.

## DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS ARISING FROM CERTAIN SHEFFER SEQUENCE

T. KIM, D. V. DOLGY, D. S. KIM, H. I. KWON, J. J. SEO

ABSTRACT. In this paper, we study some differential equations arising from certain Sheffer sequence and investigate some identities for the Sheffer sequence of polynomials which is related to the theory of hyperbolic differential equations.

### 1. Introduction

A partial differential equation of the second-order

$$Au_{xx} + 2Bu_{xy} + Cu_{yy} + Du_x + Eu_y + F = 0,$$

is called hyperbolic if the matrix is

$$\begin{vmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{vmatrix} = 0, \text{ (see [6]).}$$

The wave equation is an example of a hyperbolic partial differential equation. A sequence  $S_n(x)$  is called a Sheffer sequence if the generating function has the form

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} S_k(x) \frac{t^k}{k!} = A(t)e^{xB(t)},$$

where

$$A(t) = A_0 + A_1t + A_2t^2 + \dots$$

$$B(t) = B_1t + B_2t^2 + \dots, \quad \text{with } A_0 \neq 0, B_0 \neq 0 \text{ (see [12]).}$$

If  $f(t)$  is a delta series and  $g(t)$  is an invertible series, there exists a unique sequence  $S_n(x)$  of Sheffer polynomials such that the orthogonality condition  $\langle g(t)f(t)^k | S_n(x) \rangle = \delta_{n,k}$  holds, where  $\delta_{n,k}$  is the Kronecker delta (see [8-11]).

---

2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* 05A19; 11B83; 34A30.

*Key words and phrases.* Sheffer sequence, differential equations.

In this paper, we consider the Sheffer sequence given by the pair  $\left(\frac{1}{1+t}, 1 - (1+t)^{-2}\right)$ , namely

$$F(t, x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-t}} e^{x\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-t}}-1\right)} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} h_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!}. \tag{1.1}$$

In [5], Erdélyi also considered a Sheffer sequence which is related to  $h_n(x)$ . Indeed, his sequence is given by  $g_n(x) = \frac{1}{n!} h_n(x)$ . Also, we note that

$$h_n(x) = x e^{-x} \left[ \frac{d}{dx^2} \right]^n (x^{2n-1} e^x), \text{ (see [5])}. \tag{1.2}$$

The polynomials  $h_n(x)$  have applications to the theory of hyperbolic differential equations (see [1-4]). From (1.1), by replacing  $t$  by  $1 - e^{-2t}$ , we can derive the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned} e^t e^{x(e^t-1)} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n h_n(x) \frac{1}{n!} (e^{-2t} - 1)^n \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{n=0}^m (-1)^{n+m} h_n(x) 2^m S_2(n, m) \right) \frac{t^m}{m!}, \end{aligned} \tag{1.3}$$

where  $S_2(n, m)$  is the Stirling number of the second kind. As is well known, the Bell polynomials are defined by the generating function

$$e^{x(e^t-1)} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} Bel_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!}, \text{ (see [7])}. \tag{1.4}$$

By (1.3), we get

$$\begin{aligned} e^t e^{x(e^t-1)} &= \left( \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^l}{l!} \right) \left( \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} Bel_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!} \right) \\ &= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{n=0}^m \binom{m}{n} Bel_n(x) \right) \frac{t^m}{m!}. \end{aligned} \tag{1.5}$$

From (1.3) and (1.5), we have

$$\sum_{n=0}^m \binom{m}{n} Bel_n(x) = \sum_{n=0}^m (-1)^{n+m} h_n(x) 2^m S_2(n, m), \text{ (} m \geq 0 \text{)}. \tag{1.6}$$

In this paper, we study some differential equations arising from certain sheffer sequence and investigate some identities for the Sheffer sequence of polynomials which is related to the theory of hyperbolic differential equations.

**2. Differential equations arising from certain Sheffer sequence**

Let

$$F = F(t, x) = (1 - t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{x((1-t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} - 1)} \tag{2.1}$$

Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F^{(1)} &= \frac{dF(t, x)}{dt} = (1 - t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{x((1-t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} - 1)} \left( \frac{1}{2}(1 - t)^{-1} + \frac{1}{2}x(1 - t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} \right) \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{2}(1 - t)^{-1} + \frac{1}{2}x(1 - t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} \right) F, \end{aligned} \tag{2.2}$$

$$F^{(2)} = \frac{dF^{(1)}}{dt} = \left( \frac{3}{4}(1 - t)^{-2} + \frac{5}{4}x(1 - t)^{-\frac{5}{2}} + \frac{1}{4}x^2(1 - t)^{-3} \right) F, \tag{2.3}$$

and

$$F^{(3)} = \left( \frac{15}{8}(1 - t)^{-3} + \frac{33}{8}x(1 - t)^{-\frac{7}{2}} + \frac{12}{8}x^2(1 - t)^{-4} + \frac{1}{8}x^3(1 - t)^{-\frac{9}{2}} \right) F.$$

Thus, we are let to put

$$F^{(N)} = \left( \frac{d}{dt} \right)^N F(t, x) = \left( \sum_{i=0}^N a_i(N)x^i(1 - t)^{-N-\frac{1}{2}i} \right) F, \tag{2.4}$$

where  $N = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ .

Taking the derivative of (2.4) with respect to  $t$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} F^{(N+1)} &= \frac{dF^{(N)}}{dt} = \left( \sum_{i=0}^N (N + \frac{1}{2}i)a_i(N)x^i(1 - t)^{-N-1-\frac{1}{2}i} \right) F \\ &\quad + \left( \sum_{i=0}^N a_i(N)x^i(1 - t)^{-N-\frac{1}{2}i} \right) F^{(1)} \\ &= \left( \sum_{i=0}^N (N + \frac{1}{2}i)a_i(N)x^i(1 - t)^{-N-1-\frac{1}{2}i} \right) F \\ &\quad + \left( \sum_{i=0}^N a_i(N)x^i(1 - t)^{-N-\frac{1}{2}i} \right) \left( \frac{1}{2}(1 - t)^{-1} + \frac{1}{2}x(1 - t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} \right) F \\ &= \left( \sum_{i=0}^N (N + \frac{1}{2}i + \frac{1}{2}) a_i(N)x^i(1 - t)^{-N-1-\frac{1}{2}i} + \sum_{i=0}^N \frac{1}{2}a_i(N)x^{i+1}(1 - t)^{-N-\frac{3}{2}-\frac{1}{2}i} \right) F \\ &= \left( \sum_{i=0}^N (N + \frac{1}{2}i + \frac{1}{2}) a_i(N)x^i(1 - t)^{-N-1-\frac{1}{2}i} + \sum_{i=1}^{N+1} \frac{1}{2}a_{i-1}(N)x^i(1 - t)^{-N-1-\frac{1}{2}i} \right) F. \end{aligned} \tag{2.5}$$

On the other hand, by replacing  $N$  by  $N + 1$  in (2.4), we get

$$F^{(N+1)} = \left( \sum_{i=0}^{N+1} a_i(N+1)x^i(1-t)^{-N-1-\frac{1}{2}i} \right) F. \tag{2.6}$$

Comparing the coefficients on both sides of (2.5) and (2.6), we obtain the following recurrence relations:

$$a_0(N+1) = (N + \frac{1}{2})a_0(N), \quad a_{N+1}(N+1) = \frac{1}{2}a_N(N), \tag{2.7}$$

and

$$a_i(N+1) = \frac{1}{2}a_{i-1}(N) + (N + \frac{1}{2}i + \frac{1}{2}) a_i(N), \quad (1 \leq i \leq N). \tag{2.8}$$

In addition, we note that

$$F = F^{(0)} = a_0(0)F. \tag{2.9}$$

Thus, by (2.9), we easily get

$$a_0(0) = 1. \tag{2.10}$$

For  $N = 1$  in (1.5) and (1.2), it is not difficult to show that

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \frac{1}{2}(1-t)^{-1} + \frac{1}{2}x(1-t)^{-3/2} \right) F &= F^{(1)} \\ &= \left( a_0(1)(1-t)^{-1} + a_1(x)x(1-t)^{-3/2} \right) F. \end{aligned} \tag{2.11}$$

By comparing the coefficients on both sides of (2.11), we easily get

$$a_0(1) = \frac{1}{2}, \quad a_1(1) = \frac{1}{2}. \tag{2.12}$$

From (2.7), we can easily derive the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} a_{N+1}(N+1) &= \frac{1}{2}a_N(N) = \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 a_{N-1}(N-1) = \dots = \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^{N+1}, \\ a_0(0) &= \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^{N+1}, \end{aligned} \tag{2.13}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} a_0(N+1) &= (N + \frac{1}{2})a_0(N) = (N + \frac{1}{2})(N - \frac{1}{2})a_0(N-1) = \dots \\ &= (N + \frac{1}{2})(N - \frac{1}{2}) \dots \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2}a_0(0) = (N + \frac{1}{2})_{N+1}, \end{aligned} \tag{2.14}$$

where

$$(x)_n = x(x-1) \dots (x-n+1), \quad (n \geq 1), \quad (x)_0 = 1.$$

The matrix  $(a_i(j))$   $(0 \leq i, j \leq N)$  is given by

$$(a_i(j)) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{2} & (\frac{3}{2})_2 & (\frac{5}{2})_3 & \cdots & (N - \frac{1}{2})_N \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & (\frac{1}{2})^2 & \cdots & \cdots & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & (\frac{1}{2})^3 & \cdots & \cdot \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & 0 & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & (\frac{1}{2})^N \end{pmatrix}$$

For  $i = 1, 2, 3$  in (2.8), we have

$$\begin{aligned} a_1(N + 1) &= \frac{1}{2}a_0(N) + (N + 1)a_1(N) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(a_0(N) + (N + 1)a_0(N - 1)) + (N + 1)Na_1(N - 1) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(a_0(N) + (N + 1)a_0(N - 1) + (N + 1)Na_0(N - 2)) \\ &\quad + (N + 1)N(N - 1)a_1(N - 2) \\ &= \dots \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} (N + 1)_k a_0(N - k) + (N + 1)_N a_1(1) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^N (N + 1)_k a_0(N - k), \end{aligned} \tag{2.15}$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_2(N + 1) &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{N-2} (N + \frac{3}{2})_k a_1(N - k) + (N + \frac{3}{2})_{N-1} a_2(2) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} (N + \frac{3}{2})_k a_1(N - k), \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} a_3(N + 1) &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{N-3} (N + 2)_k a_2(N - k) + (N + 2)_{N-2} a_3(3) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{N-2} (N + 2)_k a_2(N - k). \end{aligned}$$

Continuing this process, we have

$$a_i(N + 1) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=0}^{N-i+1} \left(N + \frac{1}{2}i + \frac{1}{2}\right)_k a_{i-1}(N - k), \quad (1 \leq i \leq N). \quad (2.16)$$

Now, we give explicit expressions for  $a_i(N + 1)$ ,  $(1 \leq i \leq N)$ . From (2.16), we note that

$$a_1(N + 1) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k_1=0}^N (N + 1)_{k_1} a_0(N - k_1) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k_1=0}^N (N + 1)_{k_1} (N - k_1 - \frac{1}{2})_{N-k_1}, \quad (2.17)$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_2(N + 1) &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k_2=0}^{N-1} \left(N + \frac{3}{2}\right)_{k_2} a_1(N - k_2) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 \sum_{k_2=0}^{N-1} \sum_{k_1=0}^{N-k_2-1} \left(N + \frac{3}{2}\right)_{k_2} (N - k_2)_{k_1} (N - k_2 - k_1 - \frac{3}{2})_{N-k_2-k_1-1}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.18)$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_3(N + 1) &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 \sum_{k_3=0}^{N-2} \sum_{k_2=0}^{N-2-k_3} \sum_{k_1=0}^{N-2-k_3-k_2} (N + 2)_{k_3} (N - k_3 + \frac{1}{2})_{k_2} \\ &\quad \times (N - k_3 - k_2 - 1)_{k_1} (N - k_3 - k_2 - k_1 - \frac{5}{2})_{N-k_3-k_2-k_1-2}, \end{aligned} \quad (2.19)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} a_4(N + 1) &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^4 \sum_{k_4=0}^{N-3} \sum_{k_3=0}^{N-3-k_4} \sum_{k_2=0}^{N-3-k_4-k_3} \sum_{k_1=0}^{N-3-k_4-k_3-k_2} (N + \frac{5}{2})_{k_4} \\ &\quad \times (N - k_4 + 1)_{k_3} (N - k_4 - k_3 - \frac{1}{2})_{k_2} (N - k_4 - k_3 - k_2 - 2)_{k_1} \\ &\quad \times (N - k_4 - k_3 - k_2 - k_1 - \frac{7}{2})_{N-k_4-k_3-k_2-k_1-3}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.20)$$

So, we can deduce that, for  $1 \leq i \leq N$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} &a_i(N + 1) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^i \sum_{k_i=0}^{N-i+1} \sum_{k_{i-1}=0}^{N-i+1-k_i} \cdots \sum_{k_1=0}^{N-i+1-k_i-\cdots-k_2} \prod_{l=1}^i \left(N + \frac{3}{2}l + \frac{1}{2} - i - \sum_{j=l+1}^i k_j\right)_{k_i} \\ &\quad \times \left(N + \frac{1}{2} - i - \sum_{j=1}^i k_j\right)_{N+1-i-\sum_{j=1}^i k_j}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.21)$$



Therefore, by (2.21), we obtain the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.** For  $N = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , the following family of differential equations

$$F^{(N)} = \left(\frac{d}{dt}\right)^N F(t, x) = \left(\sum_{i=0}^N a_i(N)x^i(1-t)^{-N-\frac{1}{2}i}\right) F$$

have a solution

$$F = F(t, x) = (1-t)^{-1/2}e^{x((1-t)^{-1/2}-1)},$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} a_0(N) &= \left(N - \frac{1}{2}\right)_N, \\ a_i(N) &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^i \sum_{k_i=0}^{N-i} \sum_{k_{i-1}=0}^{N-i-k_i} \cdots \sum_{k_1=0}^{N-i-k_i-\cdots-k_2} \prod_{l=1}^i \left(N + \frac{3}{2}l - \frac{1}{2} - i - \sum_{j=l+1}^i k_j\right)_{k_l} \\ &\quad \times \left(N - \frac{1}{2} - i - \sum_{j=1}^i k_j\right)_{N-i-\sum_{j=1}^i k_j}. \end{aligned}$$

From (1.1), we note that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} h_{k+N}(x) \frac{t^k}{k!} &= F^{(N)} = \left(\sum_{i=0}^N a_i(N)x^i(1-t)^{-N-\frac{1}{2}i}\right) F \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^N a_i(N)x^i \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \left(N + \frac{1}{2}i + l - 1\right) \frac{t^l}{l!} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} h_m(x) \frac{t^m}{m!} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^N a_i(N)x^i \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\sum_{l=0}^k \binom{k}{l} \left(N + \frac{1}{2}i + l - 1\right)_l h_{k-l}(x)\right) \frac{t^k}{k!} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\sum_{i=0}^N \sum_{l=0}^k \binom{k}{l} \left(N + \frac{1}{2}i + l - 1\right)_l a_i(N)x^i h_{k-l}(x)\right) \frac{t^k}{k!}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.22}$$

Thus, by comparing the coefficients on both sides of (2.22), we obtain the following theorem.

**Theorem 2.** For  $k, N = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , we have

$$h_{k+N}(x) = \sum_{i=0}^N \sum_{l=0}^k \binom{k}{l} \left(N + \frac{1}{2}i + l - 1\right)_l a_i(N)x^i h_{k-l}(x) \tag{2.23}$$

Letting  $k = 0$  in (2.23), we obtain the following corollary.

**Corollary 3.** For  $N = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , we have

$$h_N(x) = \sum_{i=0}^N a_i(N)x^i. \quad (2.24)$$

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS. This paper is supported by grant NO 14-11-00022 of Russian Scientific Fund.

### References

1. F. A. Costabile, E. Longo, *An algebraic approach to Sheffer polynomial sequences*, Integral Transforms Spec. Funct. **25**(2014), no. 4, 295-311.
2. R. Courant, *Über direkte Methoden in der Variationsrechnung und über verwandte Fragen*, (German) Math. Ann. **97** (1927), no. 1, 711-736.
3. R. Courant, D. Hilbert, *Methoden der Mathematischen Physik, Vols. I, II*. Interscience Publishers, Inc., N.Y., 1943, xiv+469 pp., xiv+549 pp.
4. R. Courant, D. Hilbert, *Methoden der mathematischen Physik, I.*(German) Dritte Auflage. Heidelberger Taschenbücher, Band 30. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1968. xv+469 pp.
5. A. Erdélyi, W. Magnus, F. Oberhettinger, F. G. Tricomi, *Higher transcendental functions. Vol. III Based on notes left by Harry Bateman. Reprint of the 1955 original*. Robert E. Krieger Publishing Co., Inc., Melbourne, Fla., 1981. xvii+292 pp. ISBN:0-89874-069-X.
6. M. Hazewinkel, Michiel, *Hyperbolic partial differential equation, numerical methods*, Encyclopedia of Mathematics, Springer, 2001. ISBN 978-1-55608-010-4.
7. D. S. Kim, T. Kim, *Some identities of Bell polynomials*, Sci. China Math. **58** (2015), no. 10, 2095-2104.
8. D. S. Kim, T. Kim, S.-H. Rim, *Some identities arising from Sheffer sequences of special polynomials*, Adv. Stud. Contemp. Math. (Kyungshang) **23** (2013) no. 4, 681-693.
9. D. S. Kim, T. Kim, C. S. Ryoo, *Sheffer sequences for the powers of Sheffer pairs under umbral composition*, Adv. Stud. Contemp. Math (Kyungshang) **23** (2013), no. 2, 275-285.
10. T. Kim, *Identities involving Laguerre polynomials derived from umbral calculus*, Russ. J. Math. Phys. **21** (2014), no. 1, 36-45.
11. S. Roman, *The umbral calculus*, Pure and Applied Mathematics, 111. Academic Press, Inc. [Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Publishers], New York, 1984. x+193 pp. ISBN: 0-12-594380-6.
12. A. K. Shukla, S. J. Rapeli, *An extension of Sheffer polynomials*, Proyecciones **30** (2011), no. 2, 265-275.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, TIANJIN POLYTECHNIC UNIVERSITY, TIANJIN CITY, 300387, CHINA, DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, KWANGWOON UNIVERSITY, SEOUL 139-701, REPUBLIC OF KOREA

*E-mail address:* tkkim@kw.ac.kr

INSTITUTE OF MATHEMATICS AND COMPUTER SCIENCE, FAR EASTERN FEDERAL UNIVERSITY, 690950 VLADIVOSTOK, RUSSIA

*E-mail address:* dvdolgy@gmail.com

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, SOGANG UNIVERSITY, SEOUL 121-742, REPUBLIC OF KOREA

*E-mail address:* dskim@sogang.ac.kr

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, KWANGWOON UNIVERSITY, SEOUL 139-701, REPUBLIC OF KOREA

*E-mail address:* [sura@kw.ac.kr](mailto:sura@kw.ac.kr)

DEPARTMENT OF APPLIED MATHEMATICS, PUKYONG NATIONAL UNIVERSITY, BUSAN 608-737, REPUBLIC OF KOREA.

*E-mail address:* [seo2011@pknu.ac.kr](mailto:seo2011@pknu.ac.kr)

# Hyers-Ulam stability of the first order inhomogeneous matrix difference equation

Soon-Mo Jung<sup>1</sup> and Young Woo Nam<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1,2</sup>*Mathematics Section, College of Science and Technology, Hongik University,  
30016 Sejong, Republic of Korea*

<sup>1</sup>E-mail: smjung@hongik.ac.kr

<sup>2</sup>E-mail: namyoungwoo@hongik.ac.kr

## Abstract

We prove Hyers-Ulam stability of the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation  $\vec{x}_{i+1} = \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{x}_i + \vec{g}(i)$  for all integers  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Moreover, we show Hyers-Ulam stability of the  $n$ th order linear difference equation as a corollary.

## 1 Introduction

Throughout this paper, we denote by  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $\mathbb{N}$ ,  $\mathbb{N}_0$ , and  $\mathbb{Z}$  the set of all complex numbers, of all positive integers, of all nonnegative integers, and the set of all integers, respectively. Given a fixed positive integer  $n$ , let  $(\mathbb{C}^n, \|\cdot\|_n)$  be a complex normed space, each of whose elements is a column vector, and let  $\mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  be a vector space consisting of all  $(n \times n)$  complex matrices. We choose a norm  $\|\cdot\|_{n \times n}$  on  $\mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  which is compatible with  $\|\cdot\|_n$ , *i.e.*, both norms obey

$$\|\mathbf{AB}\|_{n \times n} \leq \|\mathbf{A}\|_{n \times n} \|\mathbf{B}\|_{n \times n} \quad \text{and} \quad \|\mathbf{A}\vec{x}\|_n \leq \|\mathbf{A}\|_{n \times n} \|\vec{x}\|_n \tag{1.1}$$

for all  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  and  $\vec{x} \in \mathbb{C}^n$ .

A matrix difference equation is a difference equation with matrix coefficients in which the value of vector at one point depends on the values of preceding (succeeding) points.

In this paper, we prove Hyers-Ulam stability of the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation

$$\vec{x}_{i+1} = \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{x}_i + \vec{g}(i) \tag{1.2}$$

for all integers  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , where the transition matrices  $\mathbf{A}(i)$  are nonsingular. More precisely, we prove that if a vector sequence  $\{\vec{y}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of  $\mathbb{C}^n$  satisfies the inequality

$$\|\vec{y}_{i+1} - \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{y}_i - \vec{g}(i)\|_n \leq \varepsilon_{i+1}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then there exists a solution  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  to the first order matrix difference equation (1.2) such that the bound for  $\|\vec{y}_i - \vec{x}_i\|_n$  depends on the sequence  $\{\varepsilon_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  and the transition

---

<sup>0</sup>Key words and phrases: difference equation; matrix difference equation; Hyers-Ulam stability; Fibonacci difference equation; extended Fibonacci number; approximation.

<sup>0</sup>2010 Mathematics Subject Classification: Primary 39A45, 39B82; Secondary 39A06, 39B42.

matrices  $\mathbf{A}(i)$  only. Moreover, we investigate Hyers-Ulam stability of the  $n$ th order linear inhomogeneous difference equation of the form

$$a(i + 1) = p_1(i)a(i) + p_2(i)a(i - 1) + \cdots + p_n(i)a(i - n + 1) + r(i), \tag{1.3}$$

where  $p_j, r : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  are given functions with  $p_n(i) \neq 0$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . We refer the reader to [7, 8, 9, 12, 20] for the exact definition of Hyers-Ulam stability.

## 2 Preliminaries

In this section, we investigate the general solution to the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2) for all integers  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , where

$$\vec{x}_i = \begin{pmatrix} x_{i1} \\ x_{i2} \\ \vdots \\ x_{in} \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{C}^n \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{A}(i) = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}(i) & a_{12}(i) & \cdots & a_{1n}(i) \\ a_{21}(i) & a_{22}(i) & \cdots & a_{2n}(i) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1}(i) & a_{n2}(i) & \cdots & a_{nn}(i) \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}.$$

Throughout this paper, we use the following abbreviation.

$$\Phi(n, m) := \begin{cases} \prod_{k=m}^{n-1} \mathbf{A}(k) = \mathbf{A}(n-1)\mathbf{A}(n-2)\cdots\mathbf{A}(m) & (\text{for } n > m), \\ \mathbf{I} & (\text{for } n = m), \end{cases} \tag{2.1}$$

where we set  $\Phi(n, m) := (\Phi(m, n))^{-1} = \mathbf{A}(n)^{-1}\mathbf{A}(n+1)^{-1}\cdots\mathbf{A}(m-1)^{-1}$  for  $n < m$  and  $\mathbf{I}$  denotes the identity matrix. Sometimes, we use  $\Phi(n)$  and  $\Phi^{-1}(m, n)$  instead of  $\Phi(n, 0)$  and  $(\Phi(m, n))^{-1}$ , respectively.

In the following lemma, we introduce some properties of  $\Phi(n, m)$  without proof.

**Lemma 2.1** *Given a fixed positive integer  $n$ , assume that every transition matrix  $\mathbf{A}(i) \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  is nonsingular. It holds that*

- (i)  $\Phi(i + 1, k) = \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi(i, k)$ ;
- (ii)  $\Phi^{-1}(i, k + 1) = \mathbf{A}(k)\Phi^{-1}(i, k)$ ;
- (iii)  $\mathbf{A}(k - 1)^{-1}\Phi^{-1}(i, k) = \Phi^{-1}(i, k - 1)$

for all integers  $i, k \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

In the following lemma, we give the general solution to the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2).

**Lemma 2.2** *Given a fixed positive integer  $n$ , assume that every transition matrix  $\mathbf{A}(i) \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  is nonsingular and the vectors  $\vec{g}(i) \in \mathbb{C}^n$  are given. A vector sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of  $\mathbb{C}^n$*

is a solution to the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2) if and only if the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is given in the form of

$$\vec{x}_i := \begin{cases} \Phi(i, 0)\vec{x}_0 + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} \Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) & (\text{for } i \geq 0), \\ \Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\vec{g}(i+k-1) & (\text{for } i < 0), \end{cases} \quad (2.2)$$

where  $\vec{x}_0 \in \mathbb{C}^n$  is an arbitrarily given vector.

**Proof.** First, we assume that the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is given in the form of (2.2) and we prove that the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is a solution to the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2).

If  $i$  is a nonnegative integer, then it follows from the first formula of (2.2) and Lemma 2.1 ( $i$ ) that

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{x}_{i+1} &= \Phi(i+1, 0)\vec{x}_0 + \sum_{k=0}^i \Phi(i+1, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \\ &= \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi(i, 0)\vec{x}_0 + \sum_{k=0}^i \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \\ &= \mathbf{A}(i) \left( \Phi(i, 0)\vec{x}_0 + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} \Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \right) + \vec{g}(i) \\ &= \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{x}_i + \vec{g}(i) \end{aligned}$$

for any integer  $i \geq 0$ .

If  $i = -1$ , then we use (2.2) to get

$$\vec{x}_{i+1} = \vec{x}_0$$

and

$$\vec{x}_i = \vec{x}_{-1} = \Phi^{-1}(0, -1)\vec{x}_0 - \Phi^{-1}(0, -1)\vec{g}(-1) = \mathbf{A}(-1)^{-1}\vec{x}_0 - \mathbf{A}(-1)^{-1}\vec{g}(-1).$$

Hence, we have

$$\vec{x}_{i+1} = \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{x}_i + \vec{g}(i)$$

for  $i = -1$ .

If  $i$  is an integer less than  $-1$ , then it follows from the second formula of (2.2) and Lemma

2.1 (ii) that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{x}_{i+1} &= \Phi^{-1}(0, i+1)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{k=1}^{-i-1} \Phi^{-1}(i+1+k, i+1)\vec{g}(i+k) \\
 &= \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{k=1}^{-i-1} \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi^{-1}(i+k+1, i)\vec{g}(i+k) \\
 &= \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{j=2}^{-i} \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi^{-1}(i+j, i)\vec{g}(i+j-1) \\
 &= \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\vec{g}(i+k-1) + \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi^{-1}(i+1, i)\vec{g}(i) \\
 &= \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{x}_i + \vec{g}(i)
 \end{aligned}$$

for all integers  $i < -1$ .

Now, we assume that the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is a solution to the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2) and we prove that the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  has the form of (2.2). We can easily show that the first formula of (2.2) holds for  $i = 0$ . We now assume that the first formula of (2.2) holds for some nonnegative integer  $i$ . Then, by using Lemma 2.1 (i), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{x}_{i+1} &= \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{x}_i + \vec{g}(i) \\
 &= \mathbf{A}(i) \left( \Phi(i, 0)\vec{x}_0 + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} \Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \right) + \vec{g}(i) \\
 &= \Phi(i+1, 0)\vec{x}_0 + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} \Phi(i+1, k+1)\vec{g}(k) + \vec{g}(i) \\
 &= \Phi(i+1, 0)\vec{x}_0 + \sum_{k=0}^i \Phi(i+1, k+1)\vec{g}(k)
 \end{aligned}$$

by replacing  $i$  with  $i + 1$  in the first formula of (2.2).

Finally, we assume that the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}$  is a solution to (1.2) and we will prove that  $\vec{x}_i$  is expressed by the second formula of (2.2) for every negative integer  $i$ . If we set  $i = -1$  in (1.2), then we get

$$\vec{x}_0 = \mathbf{A}(-1)\vec{x}_{-1} + \vec{g}(-1) \quad \text{or} \quad \vec{x}_{-1} = \mathbf{A}(-1)^{-1}\vec{x}_0 - \mathbf{A}(-1)^{-1}\vec{g}(-1),$$

which we obtain from the second formula of (2.2) by setting  $i = -1$ . We now assume that  $\vec{x}_i$  is expressed as the second formula of (2.2) for some negative integer  $i$ . Then, it follows from (1.2), the second formula of (2.2), and Lemma 2.1 (iii) that

$$\vec{x}_i = \mathbf{A}(i-1)\vec{x}_{i-1} + \vec{g}(i-1)$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{x}_{i-1} &= \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1}\vec{x}_i - \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1}\vec{g}(i-1) \\ &= \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1}\left(\Phi^{-1}(0,i)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{k=1}^{-i}\Phi^{-1}(i+k,i)\vec{g}(i+k-1)\right) - \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1}\vec{g}(i-1) \\ &= \Phi^{-1}(0,i-1)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{k=0}^{-i}\Phi^{-1}(i+k,i-1)\vec{g}(i+k-1) \\ &= \Phi^{-1}(0,i-1)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{k=1}^{-i+1}\Phi^{-1}(i+k-1,i-1)\vec{g}(i+k-2), \end{aligned}$$

which is a consequence of the second formula of (2.2) provided we replace  $i$  with  $i-1$ .  $\square$

**Remark 2.3** Given a fixed positive integer  $n$ , assume that every transition matrix  $\mathbf{A}(i) \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  is nonsingular and the vectors  $\vec{g}(i) \in \mathbb{C}^n$  are given. If vector sequences  $\{\vec{x}_{i,h}\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  and  $\{\vec{x}_{i,p}\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of  $\mathbb{C}^n$  are defined by

$$\vec{x}_{i,h} := \begin{cases} \Phi(i,0)\vec{x}_0 & (\text{for } i \geq 0), \\ \Phi^{-1}(0,i)\vec{x}_0 & (\text{for } i < 0) \end{cases}$$

resp.

$$\vec{x}_{i,p} := \begin{cases} \sum_{k=0}^{i-1}\Phi(i,k+1)\vec{g}(k) & (\text{for } i \geq 0), \\ -\sum_{k=1}^{-i}\Phi^{-1}(i+k,i)\vec{g}(i+k-1) & (\text{for } i < 0), \end{cases}$$

then the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_{i,h}\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is a solution to the homogeneous difference equation  $\vec{x}_{i+1} = \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{x}_i$  corresponding to (1.2) and the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_{i,p}\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is a particular solution to the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2).

### 3 Hyers-Ulam stability of $\vec{x}_{i+1} = \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{x}_i + \vec{g}(i)$

We now prove our main theorem concerning the Hyers-Ulam stability of the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2). Obviously, our theorem is a generalization and an improvement of [13, Theorem 2.1].

**Theorem 3.1** Given a fixed positive integer  $n$ , let  $(\mathbb{C}^n, \|\cdot\|_n)$  and  $(\mathbb{C}^{n \times n}, \|\cdot\|_{n \times n})$  be complex normed spaces, whose elements are column vectors resp.  $(n \times n)$  complex matrices, with the property (1.1). Assume that every transition matrix  $\mathbf{A}(i) \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  is nonsingular, the vectors  $\vec{g}(i) \in \mathbb{C}^n$  are given, and that  $\{\varepsilon_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is a sequence of nonnegative real numbers. If a vector sequence  $\{\vec{y}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of  $\mathbb{C}^n$  satisfies the inequality

$$\|\vec{y}_{i+1} - \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{y}_i - \vec{g}(i)\|_n \leq \varepsilon_{i+1} \tag{3.1}$$



for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then there exists a solution  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  to the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2) such that

$$\|\vec{y}_i - \vec{x}_i\|_n \leq \begin{cases} \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k \|\Phi(i, k)\|_{n \times n} + \|\Phi(i, 0)\|_{n \times n} \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_n & (\text{for } i \geq 0), \\ \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \varepsilon_{i+k} \|\Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\|_{n \times n} + \|\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\|_{n \times n} \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_n & (\text{for } i < 0). \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** First, we assume that  $i \geq 0$ . In view of Lemma 2.2, the vector sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i=0,1,\dots}$  defined by

$$\vec{x}_i = \Phi(i, 0)\vec{x}_0 + \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} \Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \tag{3.2}$$

satisfies the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2) for  $i \geq 0$ .

We now apply the mathematical induction to prove that

$$\vec{y}_i - \Phi(i, 0)\vec{y}_0 - \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} \Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) = \sum_{k=1}^i \Phi(i, k)(\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)) \tag{3.3}$$

for all integers  $i \geq 0$ . It is obvious that the equality (3.3) holds for  $i = 0$ . We assume that the equality (3.3) holds for some integer  $i \geq 0$ . Then, it follows from Lemma 2.1 (i) and (3.3) that

$$\begin{aligned} & \vec{y}_{i+1} - \Phi(i+1, 0)\vec{y}_0 - \sum_{k=0}^i \Phi(i+1, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \\ &= \vec{y}_{i+1} - \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi(i, 0)\vec{y}_0 - \sum_{k=0}^i \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \\ &= \vec{y}_{i+1} - \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{y}_i - \vec{g}(i) + \mathbf{A}(i) \left( \vec{y}_i - \Phi(i, 0)\vec{y}_0 - \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} \Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \right) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^i \mathbf{A}(i)\Phi(i, k)(\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)) + \vec{y}_{i+1} - \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{y}_i - \vec{g}(i) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{i+1} \Phi(i+1, k)(\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)), \end{aligned}$$

which can be obtained from the equality (3.3) by replacing  $i$  with  $i + 1$ . Thus, we conclude by induction that the equality (3.3) holds for all integers  $i \geq 0$ .

Hence, it follows from (3.1) and (3.3) that

$$\begin{aligned} & \left\| \vec{y}_i - \Phi(i, 0)\vec{y}_0 - \sum_{k=0}^{i-1} \Phi(i, k+1)\vec{g}(k) \right\|_n \\ & \leq \sum_{k=1}^i \|\Phi(i, k)\|_{n \times n} \|\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)\|_n \\ & \leq \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k \|\Phi(i, k)\|_{n \times n} \end{aligned} \tag{3.4}$$

for  $i \geq 0$ . In view of (3.2) and (3.4), we have

$$\|\vec{y}_i - \Phi(i, 0)\vec{y}_0 + \Phi(i, 0)\vec{x}_0 - \vec{x}_i\|_n \leq \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k \|\Phi(i, k)\|_{n \times n}$$

or

$$\|\vec{y}_i - \vec{x}_i\|_n \leq \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k \|\Phi(i, k)\|_{n \times n} + \|\Phi(i, 0)\|_{n \times n} \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_n$$

for all integers  $i \geq 0$ .

Now, assume that  $i < 0$ . By Lemma 2.2, the sequence  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i=-1, -2, \dots}$  defined by

$$\vec{x}_i = \Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{x}_0 - \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\vec{g}(i+k-1) \tag{3.5}$$

satisfies the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2) for  $i < 0$ . Using the mathematical induction, we prove that

$$\begin{aligned} & \vec{y}_i - \Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{y}_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\vec{g}(i+k-1) \\ & = - \sum_{k=i+1}^0 \Phi^{-1}(k, i)(\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)) \end{aligned} \tag{3.6}$$

for all integers  $i < 0$ . It is obvious that the equality (3.6) holds for  $i = -1$ . We assume that the equality (3.6) holds for some integer  $i < 0$ . Then, it follows from Lemma 2.1 (ii), (iii), and (3.6) that

$$\begin{aligned} & \vec{y}_{i-1} - \Phi^{-1}(0, i-1)\vec{y}_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{-i+1} \Phi^{-1}(i+k-1, i-1)\vec{g}(i+k-2) \\ & = \vec{y}_{i-1} - \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1}\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{y}_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{-i+1} \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1}\Phi^{-1}(i+k-1, i)\vec{g}(i+k-2) \\ & = \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1} \left( \mathbf{A}(i-1)\vec{y}_{i-1} - \Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{y}_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{-i+1} \Phi^{-1}(i+k-1, i)\vec{g}(i+k-2) \right) \\ & = - \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1}(\vec{y}_i - \mathbf{A}(i-1)\vec{y}_{i-1} - \vec{g}(i-1)) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & + \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1} \left( \vec{y}_i - \Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{y}_0 + \sum_{k=2}^{-i+1} \Phi^{-1}(i+k-1, i)\vec{g}(i+k-2) \right) \\
 = & - \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1} (\vec{y}_i - \mathbf{A}(i-1)\vec{y}_{i-1} - \vec{g}(i-1)) \\
 & - \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1} \sum_{k=i+1}^0 \Phi^{-1}(k, i) (\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)) \\
 = & - \sum_{k=i}^0 \mathbf{A}(i-1)^{-1} \Phi^{-1}(k, i) (\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)) \\
 = & - \sum_{k=i}^0 \Phi^{-1}(k, i-1) (\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)),
 \end{aligned}$$

which can be obtained from the equality (3.6) by replacing  $i$  with  $i - 1$ . By induction, we conclude that the equality (3.6) holds for any integer  $i < 0$ .

Therefore, by (3.1) and (3.6), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left\| \vec{y}_i - \Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{y}_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\vec{g}(i+k-1) \right\|_n \\
 & \leq \sum_{k=i+1}^0 \|\Phi^{-1}(k, i)\|_{n \times n} \|\vec{y}_k - \mathbf{A}(k-1)\vec{y}_{k-1} - \vec{g}(k-1)\|_n \tag{3.7} \\
 & \leq \sum_{k=i+1}^0 \varepsilon_k \|\Phi^{-1}(k, i)\|_{n \times n}
 \end{aligned}$$

for any integer  $i < 0$ . Taking (3.5) and (3.7) into account, we get

$$\|\vec{y}_i - \Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{y}_0 + \Phi^{-1}(0, i)\vec{x}_0 - \vec{x}_i\|_n \leq \sum_{k=i+1}^0 \varepsilon_k \|\Phi^{-1}(k, i)\|_{n \times n}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|\vec{y}_i - \vec{x}_i\|_n & \leq \sum_{k=i+1}^0 \varepsilon_k \|\Phi^{-1}(k, i)\|_{n \times n} + \|\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\|_{n \times n} \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_n \\
 & = \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \varepsilon_{i+k} \|\Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\|_{n \times n} + \|\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\|_{n \times n} \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_n
 \end{aligned}$$

for all integers  $i < 0$ . □

### 4 Applications

In this section, let  $n$  be a fixed positive integer. We assume that the  $n$ th order linear inhomogeneous difference equation of the form (1.3) is given, where  $p_j, r : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  are given functions with  $p_n(i) \neq 0$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

If we set

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} \sum_{j=1}^n |a_{ij}| \quad \text{and} \quad \|\vec{x}\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq j \leq n} |x_j|$$

for all  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  and  $\vec{x} \in \mathbb{C}^n$ , then these norms satisfy the conditions in (1.1).

We now prove Hyers-Ulam stability of the  $n$ th order linear inhomogeneous difference equation (1.3).

**Theorem 4.1** *Let  $n$  be a fixed positive integer and  $p_1, \dots, p_n, r : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be given functions with  $p_n(i) \neq 0$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Assume that a sequence  $\{\varepsilon_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of nonnegative numbers is given. If a sequence  $\{a(i)\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of complex numbers satisfies the inequality*

$$|a(i+1) - p_1(i)a(i) - p_2(i)a(i-1) - \dots - p_n(i)a(i-n+1) - r(i)| \leq \varepsilon_{i+1} \tag{4.1}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then there exists a sequence  $\{c(i)\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of complex numbers which is a solution to the  $n$ th order linear inhomogeneous difference equation (1.3) such that

$$|a(i) - c(i)| \leq \begin{cases} \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k \|\Phi(i, k)\|_\infty + \|\Phi(i, 0)\|_\infty \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & \text{(for } i \geq 0\text{),} \\ \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \varepsilon_{i+k} \|\Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\|_\infty + \|\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\|_\infty \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & \text{(for } i < 0\text{),} \end{cases}$$

where  $\Phi(i, k)$  and  $\Phi^{-1}(i, k)$  are defined in (2.1) and (4.2), and where  $\vec{y}_0$  and  $\vec{x}_0$  are defined in (4.7).

**Proof.** For any  $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, n-1\}$ , we define the complex numbers  $b_k(i)$  by

$$\begin{aligned} b_1(i) &= a(i-1), \\ b_2(i) &= b_1(i-1), \\ b_3(i) &= b_2(i-1), \\ &\vdots \\ b_{n-1}(i) &= b_{n-2}(i-1) \end{aligned}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . We further define

$$\mathbf{A}(i) := \begin{pmatrix} p_1(i) & p_2(i) & p_3(i) & \cdots & p_{n-1}(i) & p_n(i) \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{4.2}$$

$$\vec{y}_i := \begin{pmatrix} a(i) \\ b_1(i) \\ b_2(i) \\ \vdots \\ b_{n-1}(i) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{g}(i) := \begin{pmatrix} r(i) \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{4.3}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , where  $\mathbf{A}(i)$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix and  $\vec{y}_i, \vec{g}(i)$  are  $n \times 1$  vectors.

Using these notations and considering (4.1), the sequence  $\{\vec{y}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  satisfies the inequality

$$\|\vec{y}_{i+1} - \mathbf{A}(i)\vec{y}_i - \vec{g}(i)\|_\infty \leq \varepsilon_{i+1}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Moreover, by the assumption that  $p_n(i) \neq 0$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , we can see that every  $\mathbf{A}(i)$  is nonsingular.

According to Theorem 3.1, there exists a solution  $\{\vec{x}_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  to the first order linear inhomogeneous matrix difference equation (1.2) such that

$$\|\vec{y}_i - \vec{x}_i\|_\infty \leq \begin{cases} \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k \|\Phi(i, k)\|_\infty + \|\Phi(i, 0)\|_\infty \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & \text{(for } i \geq 0\text{),} \\ \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \varepsilon_{i+k} \|\Phi^{-1}(i+k, i)\|_\infty + \|\Phi^{-1}(0, i)\|_\infty \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & \text{(for } i < 0\text{).} \end{cases} \quad (4.4)$$

If we set

$$\vec{x}_i := \begin{pmatrix} x_1(i) \\ x_2(i) \\ \vdots \\ x_n(i) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (4.5)$$

then it follows from (1.2) that

$$\begin{aligned} x_1(i+1) &= p_1(i)x_1(i) + p_2(i)x_2(i) + p_3(i)x_3(i) + \cdots + p_n(i)x_n(i) + r(i), \\ x_2(i+1) &= x_1(i), \\ x_3(i+1) &= x_2(i), \\ &\vdots \\ x_n(i+1) &= x_{n-1}(i) \end{aligned} \quad (4.6)$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Moreover, if we define  $c(i) := x_1(i)$  for all integers  $i$ , then we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_1(i+1) &= c(i+1), \\ x_1(i) &= c(i), \\ x_2(i) &= x_1(i-1) = c(i-1), \\ &\vdots \\ x_n(i) &= x_{n-1}(i-1) = \cdots = x_1(i-n+1) = c(i-n+1). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, by (4.6), the sequence  $\{c(i)\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  is a solution to the  $n$ th order linear inhomogeneous difference equation (1.3).

Since

$$\vec{y}_i = \begin{pmatrix} a(i) \\ a(i-1) \\ a(i-2) \\ \vdots \\ a(i-n+1) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{x}_i = \begin{pmatrix} c(i) \\ c(i-1) \\ c(i-2) \\ \vdots \\ c(i-n+1) \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.7)$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , we get

$$|a(i) - c(i)| \leq \|\vec{y}_i - \vec{x}_i\|_\infty$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . In view of (4.4), we complete the proof of this theorem.  $\square$

We now consider the second order linear homogeneous difference equation of the form

$$a(i + 1) = p_1(i)a(i) + p_2(i)a(i - 1) \tag{4.8}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . The solution of (4.8) is called the (extended) Fibonacci numbers when  $p_1(i) = p_2(i) \equiv 1$ ,  $a(0) = 1$ , and  $a(1) = 1$ .

If we substitute  $n = 2$ ,  $p_1(i) = 1$ ,  $p_2(i) = 1$ , and  $r(i) = 0$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$  in Theorem 4.1, then we prove the following corollary concerning Hyers-Ulam stability of the Fibonacci difference equation. However, this corollary shows that Theorem 4.1 is not efficient when the transition matrices  $\mathbf{A}(i)$  are constant, *i.e.*,  $\mathbf{A}(i) = \mathbf{A}$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Nevertheless, we introduce this corollary because its proof includes some new properties of the extended Fibonacci numbers. (In general, it is reasonable to apply [21, Theorem 5] when the transition matrices  $\mathbf{A}(i)$  are constant.)

**Corollary 4.2** *Assume that a sequence  $\{\varepsilon_i\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of nonnegative numbers is given. If a sequence  $\{a(i)\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of complex numbers satisfies the inequality*

$$|a(i + 1) - a(i) - a(i - 1)| \leq \varepsilon_{i+1} \tag{4.9}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then there exists a sequence  $\{c(i)\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of complex numbers which is a solution to the Fibonacci difference equation, *i.e.*, the difference equation (4.8) with  $p_1(i) = p_2(i) \equiv 1$  such that

$$|a(i) - c(i)| \leq \begin{cases} \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k F(i - k + 1) + F(i + 1) \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i \geq 0), \\ \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \varepsilon_{i+k} F(k + 1) + F(-i + 1) \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i < 0), \end{cases}$$

where  $F(i)$  denotes the  $i$ th extended Fibonacci number and

$$\|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty = \max \{ |a(0) - c(0)|, |a(-1) - c(-1)| \}.$$

**Proof.** If we set

$$\mathbf{A} := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \vec{y}_i := \begin{pmatrix} a(i) \\ a(i - 1) \end{pmatrix},$$

then it follows from (4.9) that

$$\|\vec{y}_{i+1} - \mathbf{A}\vec{y}_i\|_\infty \leq \varepsilon_{i+1}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

According to Theorem 4.1, there exists a sequence  $\{c(i)\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of complex numbers which is a solution to the Fibonacci difference equation (4.8) with  $p_1(i) = p_2(i) \equiv 1$  such that

$$|a(i) - c(i)| \leq \begin{cases} \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k \|\mathbf{A}^{i-k}\|_\infty + \|\mathbf{A}^i\|_\infty \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i \geq 0), \\ \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \varepsilon_{i+k} \|\mathbf{A}^{-k}\|_\infty + \|\mathbf{A}^i\|_\infty \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i < 0), \end{cases} \tag{4.10}$$

where  $\vec{y}_i$  and  $\vec{x}_i$  are defined in (4.7) for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

Here, we introduce some (extended) Fibonacci numbers explicitly.

$$\begin{aligned} \dots, F(-4) = 2, F(-3) = -1, F(-2) = 1, F(-1) = 0, \\ F(0) = 1, F(1) = 1, F(2) = 2, F(3) = 3, F(4) = 5, \dots \end{aligned} \tag{4.11}$$

and we prove that

$$F(i)F(i - 1) < 0 \tag{4.12}$$

for any integer  $i \leq -2$ . If the relation (4.12) were not true, then there would exist an integer  $i_0 \leq -2$  such that  $F(i_0)F(i_0 - 1) \geq 0$ . Then we would have

$$\begin{aligned} -1 &= F(-2)F(-3) \\ &= F(-3)^2 + F(-3)F(-4) \\ &= F(-3)^2 + F(-4)^2 + F(-4)F(-5) \\ &\vdots \\ &= F(-3)^2 + F(-4)^2 + \dots + F(i_0)^2 + F(i_0)F(i_0 - 1) \\ &\geq 0, \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction.

We now prove that

$$|F(i)| = |F(-i - 2)| \tag{4.13}$$

for any  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . First, we apply the induction to prove that the equality (4.13) holds for all integers  $i \geq 0$ . In view of (4.11), it is obvious that the equality (4.13) holds for  $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$ . Assume that (4.13) holds for all integers  $1 \leq i \leq i_0$ , where  $i_0$  is an integer not less than 2. In view of (4.11) and (4.12), we further have

$$\begin{aligned} |F(i_0 + 1)| &= |F(i_0) + F(i_0 - 1)| \\ &= |F(i_0)| + |F(i_0 - 1)| \\ &= |F(-i_0 - 2)| + |F(-i_0 - 1)| \\ &= |-F(-i_0 - 2) + F(-i_0 - 1)| \\ &= |F(-i_0 - 3)|, \end{aligned}$$

which can be obtained from (4.13) by replacing  $i$  with  $i_0 + 1$ . Hence, we conclude that the equality (4.13) holds for all integers  $i \geq 0$ .

Now, we apply an induction to prove that the equality (4.13) holds for all integers  $i < 0$ . In view of (4.11), we easily see that the equality (4.13) holds for  $i \in \{-1, -2\}$ . Assume that (4.13) holds for all integers  $i_0 \leq i \leq -3$ , where  $i_0$  is an integer less than  $-2$ . Then, by (4.12) and (4.13), we have

$$\begin{aligned} |F(i_0 - 1)| &= |F(i_0 + 1) - F(i_0)| \\ &= |F(i_0 + 1)| + |F(i_0)| \\ &= |F(-i_0 - 3)| + |F(-i_0 - 2)| \\ &= |F(-i_0 - 3) + F(-i_0 - 2)| \\ &= |F(-i_0 - 1)|, \end{aligned}$$

which we can obtain from (4.13) by replacing  $i$  with  $i_0 - 1$ . Thus, the equality (4.13) holds for all integers  $i < 0$ .

Moreover, we apply the mathematical induction to prove

$$\mathbf{A}^i = \begin{pmatrix} F(i) & F(i - 1) \\ F(i - 1) & F(i - 2) \end{pmatrix} \tag{4.14}$$

for any  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Obviously, the equality (4.14) holds for  $i \in \{0, 1\}$ . Assume that (4.14) holds for some integer  $i \geq 0$ . Then, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A}^{i+1} &= \mathbf{A}^i \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} F(i) & F(i - 1) \\ F(i - 1) & F(i - 2) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} F(i) + F(i - 1) & F(i) \\ F(i - 1) + F(i - 2) & F(i - 1) \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} F(i + 1) & F(i) \\ F(i) & F(i - 1) \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned}$$

which can be obtained from (4.14) by replacing  $i$  with  $i + 1$ . Similarly, we prove that the equality (4.14) holds for all negative integers  $i$ .

Using (4.13) and (4.14), we prove that

$$\|\mathbf{A}^i\|_\infty = \begin{cases} F(i + 1) & (\text{for } i \geq 0), \\ F(-i + 1) & (\text{for } i < 0). \end{cases} \tag{4.15}$$

It is obvious that the first equality of (4.15) is true for  $i \in \{0, 1\}$ . Assume that  $i \geq 2$ . Then, considering (4.14) and the fact that  $i - 2 \geq 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbf{A}^i\|_\infty &= \max \{ |F(i)| + |F(i - 1)|, |F(i - 1)| + |F(i - 2)| \} \\ &= \max \{ F(i) + F(i - 1), F(i - 1) + F(i - 2) \} \\ &= \max \{ F(i + 1), F(i) \} \\ &= F(i + 1) \end{aligned}$$

for any integer  $i \geq 2$ .

Now, we prove the equality (4.15) for  $i < 0$ . It follows from (4.13) and (4.14) that

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathbf{A}^i\|_\infty &= \max \{ |F(i)| + |F(i - 1)|, |F(i - 1)| + |F(i - 2)| \} \\ &= \max \{ |F(-i - 2)| + |F(-i - 1)|, |F(-i - 1)| + |F(-i)| \} \\ &= \max \{ F(-i - 2) + F(-i - 1), F(-i - 1) + F(-i) \} \\ &= \max \{ F(-i), F(-i + 1) \} \\ &= F(-i + 1) \end{aligned}$$



for any integer  $i < 0$ .

Finally, by (4.10) and (4.15), we have

$$|a(i) - c(i)| \leq \begin{cases} \sum_{k=1}^i \varepsilon_k F(i - k + 1) + F(i + 1) \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i \geq 0), \\ \sum_{k=1}^{-i} \varepsilon_{i+k} F(k + 1) + F(-i + 1) \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i < 0), \end{cases}$$

which completes our proof. □

According to [16, Theorem 5.1], the following formula is true:

$$\sum_{k=1}^i F(k) = F(i + 2) - 2 \tag{4.16}$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{N}_0$ , where  $F(i)$  denotes the  $i$ th extended Fibonacci number with the initial values,  $F(-1) = 0$ ,  $F(0) = 1$ , and  $F(1) = 1$ .

**Remark 4.3** Let  $\varepsilon$  be an arbitrarily given positive number. Assume that a sequence  $\{a(i)\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of complex numbers satisfies the inequality

$$|a(i + 1) - a(i) - a(i - 1)| \leq \varepsilon$$

for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ . According to Corollary 4.2 and (4.16), there exists a sequence  $\{c(i)\}_{i \in \mathbb{Z}}$  of complex numbers which is a solution to the Fibonacci difference equation such that

$$|a(i) - c(i)| \leq \begin{cases} F(i + 2)\varepsilon - 2\varepsilon + F(i + 1) \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i > 0), \\ \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i = 0), \\ F(-i + 3)\varepsilon - 3\varepsilon + F(-i + 1) \|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty & (\text{for } i < 0), \end{cases}$$

where  $F(i)$  denotes the  $i$ th extended Fibonacci number with the initial values,  $F(-1) = 0$ ,  $F(0) = 1$ , and  $F(1) = 1$ , and

$$\|\vec{y}_0 - \vec{x}_0\|_\infty = \max \{ |a(0) - c(0)|, |a(-1) - c(-1)| \}.$$

In particular, under strong additional conditions that  $a(-1) = c(-1)$  and  $a(0) = c(0)$ , the last inequality reduces into

$$|a(i) - c(i)| \leq \begin{cases} F(i + 2)\varepsilon - 2\varepsilon & (\text{for } i > 0), \\ 0 & (\text{for } i = 0), \\ F(-i + 3)\varepsilon - 3\varepsilon & (\text{for } i < 0). \end{cases}$$

**Remark 4.4** The Hyers-Ulam stability of the Fibonacci functional equation has been investigated in [1, 10, 11, 14, 15], while Hyers-Ulam stability of the linear difference equations has been investigated in [1, 2, 3, 5, 17, 18, 19]. It should be remarked that many interesting theorems have been proved in [4, 6] concerning the linear (or nonlinear) recurrences. Especially, Hyers-Ulam stability of the first order matrix difference equations with constant matrix has been proved in [21] in the domain  $\mathbb{N}_0$ .

**Acknowledgment.** The first author was supported by Basic Science Research Program through the National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) funded by the Ministry of Education (No. 2013R1A1A2005557 and 2015R1D1A1A02061826).

## References

- [1] J. Brzdęk and S.-M. Jung, *A note on stability of a linear functional equation of second order connected with the Fibonacci numbers and Lucas sequences*, J. Inequal. Appl. **2010** (2010), Article ID 793947, 10 pages.
- [2] J. Brzdęk and S.-M. Jung, *A note on stability of an operator linear equation of the second order*, Abstr. Appl. Anal. **2011** (2011), Article ID 602713, 15 pages.
- [3] J. Brzdęk, D. Popa and B. Xu, *Note on the nonstability of the linear recurrence*, Abh. Math. Sem. Univ. Hamburg **76** (2006), 183–189.
- [4] J. Brzdęk, D. Popa and B. Xu, *The Hyers-Ulam stability of nonlinear recurrences*, J. Math. Anal. Appl. **335** (2007), 443–449.
- [5] J. Brzdęk, D. Popa and B. Xu, *The Hyers-Ulam stability of linear equations of higher orders*, Acta Math. Hungar. **120** (2008), 1–8.
- [6] J. Brzdęk, D. Popa and B. Xu, *Remarks on stability of the linear recurrence of higher order*, Appl. Math. Lett. **23** (2010), 1459–1463.
- [7] S. Czerwik, *Functional Equations and Inequalities in Several Variables*, World Sci. Publ., Singapore, 2002.
- [8] D. H. Hyers, *On the stability of the linear functional equation*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA **27** (1941), 222–224.
- [9] D. H. Hyers, G. Isac and Th. M. Rassias, *Stability of Functional Equations in Several Variables*, Birkhäuser, Boston, 1998.
- [10] S.-M. Jung, *Functional equation  $f(x) = pf(x-1) - qf(x-2)$  and its Hyers-Ulam stability*, J. Inequal. Appl. **2009** (2009), Article ID 181678, 10 pages.
- [11] S.-M. Jung, *Hyers-Ulam stability of Fibonacci functional equation*, Bull. Iranian Math. Soc. **35** (2009), no. 2, 217–227.
- [12] S.-M. Jung, *Hyers-Ulam-Rassias Stability of Functional Equations in Nonlinear Analysis*, Springer Optimization and Its Applications Vol. **48**, Springer, New York, 2011.
- [13] S.-M. Jung, *Hyers-Ulam stability of the first-order matrix difference equations*, Adv. Difference Equ. **2015** (2015), no. 170, 13 pages.
- [14] S.-M. Jung and M. Th. Rassias, *A linear functional equation of third order associated with the Fibonacci numbers*, Abstr. Appl. Anal. **2014** (2014), Article ID 137468, 7 pages.
- [15] C. Mortici, M. Th. Rassias and S.-M. Jung, *On the stability of a functional equation associated with the Fibonacci numbers*, Abstr. Appl. Anal. **2014** (2014), Article ID 546046, 6 pages.
- [16] T. Koshy, *Fibonacci and Lucas Numbers with Applications*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 2001.
- [17] D. Popa, *Hyers-Ulam-Rassias stability of a linear recurrence*, J. Math. Anal. Appl. **309** (2005), 591–597.
- [18] D. Popa, *Hyers-Ulam stability of the linear recurrence with constant coefficients*, Adv. Difference Equ. **2005** (2005), no. 2, 101–107.
- [19] T. Trif, *Hyers-Ulam-Rassias stability of a linear functional equation with constant coefficients*, Nonlinear Funct. Anal. Appl. **11** (2006), no. 5, 881–889.

- [20] S. M. Ulam, A Collection of Mathematical Problems, Interscience Publishers, New York, 1960. Reprinted as: Problems in Modern Mathematics, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1964.
- [21] B. Xu and J. Brzdęk, *Hyers-Ulam stability of a system of first order linear recurrences with constant coefficients*, Discrete Dyn. Nat. Soc. **2015** (2015), Article ID 269356, 5 pages.

# Self Adjoint Operator Ostrowski type Inequalities

George A. Anastassiou  
 Department of Mathematical Sciences  
 University of Memphis  
 Memphis, TN 38152, U.S.A.  
 ganastss@memphis.edu

## Abstract

We present here several self adjoint operator Ostrowski type inequalities to all directions. These are based in the operator order over a Hilbert space.

**2010 AMS Subject Classification:** 26D10, 26D20, 47A60, 47A67.

**Key Words and Phrases:** Self adjoint operator, Hilbert space, Ostrowski inequality.

## 1 Motivation

In 1938, A. Ostrowski [12] proved the following important inequality:

Let  $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be continuous on  $[a, b]$  and differentiable on  $(a, b)$  whose derivative  $f' : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is bounded on  $(a, b)$ , i.e.,  $\|f'\|_\infty := \sup_{t \in (a,b)} |f'(t)| < +\infty$ . Then

$$\left| \frac{1}{b-a} \int_a^b f(t) dt - f(x) \right| \leq \left[ \frac{1}{4} + \frac{(x - \frac{a+b}{2})^2}{(b-a)^2} \right] (b-a) \|f'\|_\infty,$$

for any  $x \in [a, b]$ . The constant  $\frac{1}{4}$  is the best possible.

In this article we present self adjoint operator Ostrowski type inequalities on a Hilbert space in the operator order.

## 2 Background

Let  $A$  be a selfadjoint linear operator on a complex Hilbert space  $(H; \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$ . The Gelfand map establishes a  $*$ -isometrically isomorphism  $\Phi$  between the set

$C(Sp(A))$  of all continuous functions defined on the spectrum of  $A$ , denoted  $Sp(A)$ , and the  $C^*$ -algebra  $C^*(A)$  generated by  $A$  and the identity operator  $1_H$  on  $H$  as follows (see e.g. [10, p. 3]):

For any  $f, g \in C(Sp(A))$  and any  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$  we have

- (i)  $\Phi(\alpha f + \beta g) = \alpha\Phi(f) + \beta\Phi(g)$ ;
- (ii)  $\Phi(fg) = \Phi(f)\Phi(g)$  (the operation composition is on the right) and  $\Phi(\bar{f}) = (\Phi(f))^*$ ;
- (iii)  $\|\Phi(f)\| = \|f\| := \sup_{t \in Sp(A)} |f(t)|$ ;
- (iv)  $\Phi(f_0) = 1_H$  and  $\Phi(f_1) = A$ , where  $f_0(t) = 1$  and  $f_1(t) = t$ , for  $t \in Sp(A)$ .

With this notation we define

$$f(A) := \Phi(f), \text{ for all } f \in C(Sp(A)),$$

and we call it the continuous functional calculus for a selfadjoint operator  $A$ .

If  $A$  is a selfadjoint operator and  $f$  is a real valued continuous function on  $Sp(A)$  then  $f(t) \geq 0$  for any  $t \in Sp(A)$  implies that  $f(A) \geq 0$ , i.e.  $f(A)$  is a positive operator on  $H$ . Moreover, if both  $f$  and  $g$  are real valued continuous functions on  $Sp(A)$  then the following important property holds:

(P)  $f(t) \geq g(t)$  for any  $t \in Sp(A)$ , implies that  $f(A) \geq g(A)$  in the operator order of  $B(H)$  (the Banach algebra of all bounded linear operators from  $H$  into itself).

Equivalently, we use (see [8], pp. 7-8):

Let  $U$  be a selfadjoint operator on the complex Hilbert space  $(H, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$  with the spectrum  $Sp(U)$  included in the interval  $[m, M]$  for some real numbers  $m < M$  and  $\{E_\lambda\}_\lambda$  be its spectral family.

Then for any continuous function  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , it is well known that we have the following spectral representation in terms of the Riemann-Stieltjes integral:

$$\langle f(U)x, y \rangle = \int_{m-0}^M f(\lambda) d(\langle E_\lambda x, y \rangle),$$

for any  $x, y \in H$ . The function  $g_{x,y}(\lambda) := \langle E_\lambda x, y \rangle$  is of bounded variation on the interval  $[m, M]$ , and

$$g_{x,y}(m-0) = 0 \text{ and } g_{x,y}(M) = \langle x, y \rangle,$$

for any  $x, y \in H$ . Furthermore, it is known that  $g_x(\lambda) := \langle E_\lambda x, x \rangle$  is increasing and right continuous on  $[m, M]$ .

We have also the formula

$$\langle f(U)x, x \rangle = \int_{m-0}^M f(\lambda) d(\langle E_\lambda x, x \rangle), \quad \forall x \in H.$$

As a symbol we can write

$$f(U) = \int_{m-0}^M f(\lambda) dE_\lambda.$$

Above,  $m = \min \{\lambda | \lambda \in Sp(U)\} := \min Sp(U)$ ,  $M = \max \{\lambda | \lambda \in Sp(U)\} := \max Sp(U)$ . The projections  $\{E_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}}$ , are called the spectral family of  $A$ , with the properties:

- (a)  $E_\lambda \leq E_{\lambda'}$  for  $\lambda \leq \lambda'$ ;
- (b)  $E_{m-0} = 0_H$  (zero operator),  $E_M = 1_H$  (identity operator) and  $E_{\lambda+0} = E_\lambda$  for all  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Furthermore

$$E_\lambda := \varphi_\lambda(U), \quad \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{R},$$

is a projection which reduces  $U$ , with

$$\varphi_\lambda(s) := \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } -\infty < s \leq \lambda, \\ 0, & \text{for } \lambda < s < +\infty. \end{cases}$$

The spectral family  $\{E_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}}$  determines uniquely the self-adjoint operator  $U$  and vice versa.

For more on the topic see [11], pp. 256-266, and for more details see there pp. 157-266. See also [7].

Some more basics are given (we follow [8], pp. 1-5):

Let  $(H; \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$  be a Hilbert space over  $\mathbb{C}$ . A bounded linear operator  $A$  defined on  $H$  is selfjoint, i.e.,  $A = A^*$ , iff  $\langle Ax, x \rangle \in \mathbb{R}, \forall x \in H$ , and if  $A$  is selfadjoint, then

$$\|A\| = \sup_{x \in H: \|x\|=1} |\langle Ax, x \rangle|.$$

Let  $A, B$  be selfadjoint operators on  $H$ . Then  $A \leq B$  iff  $\langle Ax, x \rangle \leq \langle Bx, x \rangle, \forall x \in H$ .

In particular,  $A$  is called positive if  $A \geq 0$ .

Denote by

$$\mathcal{P} := \left\{ \varphi(s) := \sum_{k=0}^n \alpha_k s^k \mid n \geq 0, \alpha_k \in \mathbb{C}, 0 \leq k \leq n \right\}.$$

If  $A \in \mathcal{B}(H)$  is selfadjoint, and  $\varphi(s) \in \mathcal{P}$  has real coefficients, then  $\varphi(A)$  is selfadjoint, and

$$\|\varphi(A)\| = \max \{ |\varphi(\lambda)|, \lambda \in Sp(A) \}.$$

If  $\varphi$  is any function defined on  $\mathbb{R}$  we define

$$\|\varphi\|_A := \sup \{ |\varphi(\lambda)|, \lambda \in Sp(A) \}.$$

If  $A$  is selfadjoint operator on Hilbert space  $H$  and  $\varphi$  is continuous and given that  $\varphi(A)$  is selfadjoint, then  $\|\varphi(A)\| = \|\varphi\|_A$ . And if  $\varphi$  is a continuous real valued function so it is  $|\varphi|$ , then  $\varphi(A)$  and  $|\varphi|(A) = |\varphi(A)|$  are selfadjoint operators (by [8], p. 4, Theorem 7).

Hence it holds

$$\begin{aligned} \|\varphi(A)\| &= \|\varphi\|_A = \sup \{ \|\varphi(\lambda)\|, \lambda \in Sp(A) \} \\ &= \sup \{ |\varphi(\lambda)|, \lambda \in Sp(A) \} = \|\varphi\|_A = \|\varphi(A)\|, \end{aligned}$$

that is

$$\|\varphi(A)\| = \|\varphi(A)\|.$$

For a selfadjoint operator  $A \in \mathcal{B}(H)$  which is positive, there exists a unique positive selfadjoint operator  $B := \sqrt{A} \in \mathcal{B}(H)$  such that  $B^2 = A$ , that is  $(\sqrt{A})^2 = A$ . We call  $B$  the square root of  $A$ .

Let  $A \in \mathcal{B}(H)$ , then  $A^*A$  is selfadjoint and positive. Define the "operator absolute value"  $|A| := \sqrt{A^*A}$ . If  $A = A^*$ , then  $|A| = \sqrt{A^2}$ .

For a continuous real valued function  $\varphi$  we observe the following:

$$|\varphi(A)| \text{ (the functional absolute value)} = \int_{m-0}^M |\varphi(\lambda)| dE_\lambda =$$

$$\int_{m-0}^M \sqrt{(\varphi(\lambda))^2} dE_\lambda = \sqrt{(\varphi(A))^2} = |\varphi(A)| \text{ (operator absolute value),}$$

where  $A$  is a selfadjoint operator.

That is we have

$$|\varphi(A)| \text{ (functional absolute value)} = |\varphi(A)| \text{ (operator absolute value).}$$

### 3 Main Results

Let  $A$  be a selfadjoint operator in the Hilbert space  $H$  with the spectrum  $Sp(A) \subseteq [m, M]$ ,  $m < M$ ;  $m, M \in \mathbb{R}$ .

In the next we obtain Ostrowski type inequalities in the operator order of  $\mathcal{B}(H)$  (the Banach algebra of all bounded linear operators from  $H$  into itself).

We mention

**Theorem 1** ([2], p. 498) *Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$ ,  $m < M$ ,  $s \in [m, M]$ . Then*

$$\left| \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt - f(x) \right| \leq \left( \frac{(s-m)^2 + (M-s)^2}{2(M-m)} \right) \|f'\|_\infty. \quad (1)$$

By applying property (P) to (1), we obtain in the operator order the following inequality:

**Theorem 2** *Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$ . Then*

$$\left| \left( \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right) 1_H - f(A) \right| \leq \left( \frac{(A - m1_H)^2 + (M1_H - A)^2}{2(M-m)} \right) \|f'\|_\infty. \tag{2}$$

We mention

**Theorem 3** (*[1], p. 191, Cerone-Dragomir*) *Let  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous on  $[m, M]$  and twice differentiable function on  $(m, M)$ , whose second derivative  $f'' : (m, M) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is bounded on  $(m, M)$ . Then*

$$\left| f(s) - \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt - \left( \frac{f(M) - f(m)}{M-m} \right) \left( s - \frac{m+M}{2} \right) \right| \leq \tag{3}$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{\left( s - \frac{m+M}{2} \right)^2}{(M-m)^2} + \frac{1}{4} \right]^2 + \frac{1}{12} \right\} (M-m)^2 \|f''\|_\infty \leq \frac{\|f''\|_\infty}{6} (M-m)^2,$$

$\forall s \in [m, M]$ .

By applying property (P) to (3), we obtain in the operator order the following inequality:

**Theorem 4** *All as in Theorem 3. Then*

$$\left| f(A) - \left( \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right) 1_H - \left( \frac{f(M) - f(m)}{M-m} \right) \left( A - \left( \frac{m+M}{2} \right) 1_H \right) \right| \tag{4}$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{\left( A - \left( \frac{m+M}{2} \right) 1_H \right)^2}{(M-m)^2} + \frac{1}{4} 1_H \right]^2 + \frac{1}{12} 1_H \right\} (M-m)^2 \|f''\|_\infty$$

$$\leq \left( \frac{\|f''\|_\infty}{6} (M-m)^2 \right) 1_H.$$

We mention

**Theorem 5** (*[3], p. 14*) *Let  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be 3-times differentiable on  $[m, M]$ . Assume that  $f'''$  is bounded on  $[m, M]$ . Let any  $s \in [m, M]$ . Then*

$$\left| f(s) - \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt - \left( \frac{f(M) - f(m)}{M-m} \right) \left( s - \left( \frac{m+M}{2} \right) \right) - \right.$$



$$\left( \frac{f'(M) - f'(m)}{2(M - m)} \right) \left[ s^2 - (m + M)s + \left( \frac{m^2 + M^2 + 4mM}{6} \right) \right] \Bigg| \quad (5)$$

$$\leq \frac{\|f'''\|_\infty}{(M - m)^3} Z(s),$$

where

$$Z(s) = \left[ mM s^4 - \frac{1}{3} m^2 M^3 s + \frac{1}{3} m^3 M s^2 - m M^2 s^3 - \frac{1}{3} m^3 M^2 s + \frac{1}{3} m M^3 s^2 \right. \\ \left. + m^2 M^2 s^2 - m^2 M s^3 - \frac{1}{2} m s^5 - \frac{1}{2} M s^5 + \frac{1}{6} s^6 + \frac{3}{4} m^2 s^4 + \frac{3}{4} M^2 s^4 + \frac{1}{3} M^2 m^4 - \right. \\ \left. \frac{2}{3} m^3 s^3 - \frac{2}{3} M^3 s^3 - \frac{1}{3} M^3 m^3 + \frac{5}{12} m^4 s^2 + \frac{5}{12} M^4 s^2 + \frac{1}{3} M^4 m^2 - \right. \\ \left. \frac{2}{15} M m^5 - \frac{2}{15} m M^5 - \frac{1}{6} m^5 s - \frac{1}{6} M^5 s + \frac{m^6}{20} + \frac{M^6}{20} \right]. \quad (6)$$

Using (P) property and (5), (6) we derive

**Theorem 6** Let  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be 3-times differentiable on  $[m, M]$ . Assume that  $f'''$  is bounded on  $[m, M]$ . Then

$$\left| f(A) - \left( \frac{1}{M - m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right) 1_H - \left( \frac{f(M) - f(m)}{M - m} \right) \left( A - \left( \frac{m + M}{2} \right) 1_H \right) \right. \\ \left. - \left( \frac{f'(M) - f'(m)}{2(M - m)} \right) \left[ A^2 - (m + M)A + \left( \frac{m^2 + M^2 + 4mM}{6} \right) 1_H \right] \right| \quad (7)$$

$$\leq \frac{\|f'''\|_\infty}{(M - m)^3} Z(A),$$

where

$$Z(A) = \left[ mM A^4 - \frac{1}{3} m^2 M^3 A + \frac{1}{3} m^3 M A^2 - m M^2 A^3 - \frac{1}{3} m^3 M^2 A + \right. \\ \left. \frac{1}{3} m M^3 A^2 + m^2 M^2 A^2 - m^2 M A^3 - \frac{1}{2} m A^5 - \frac{1}{2} M A^5 + \frac{1}{6} A^6 + \frac{3}{4} m^2 A^4 + \right. \\ \left. \frac{3}{4} M^2 A^4 + \left( \frac{1}{3} M^2 m^4 \right) 1_H - \frac{2}{3} m^3 A^3 - \frac{2}{3} M^3 A^3 - \left( \frac{1}{3} M^3 m^3 \right) 1_H + \right. \\ \left. \frac{5}{12} m^4 A^2 + \frac{5}{12} M^4 A^2 + \left( \frac{1}{3} M^4 m^2 \right) 1_H - \right. \\ \left. \left( \frac{2}{15} M m^5 \right) 1_H - \left( \frac{2}{15} m M^5 \right) 1_H - \frac{1}{6} m^5 A - \frac{1}{6} M^5 A + \left( \frac{m^6 + M^6}{20} \right) 1_H \right]. \quad (8)$$

Let  $f \in AC([m, M])$  (absolutely continuous functions on  $[m, M]$ ),  $0 < \alpha < 1$ . Denote the right Caputo fractional derivative by  $D_{t-}^{\alpha} f$  (see [4], p. 22) and the left Caputo fractional derivative by  $D_{*t}^{\alpha} f$  (see [4], p. 78),  $\forall t \in [m, M]$ .

We need

**Theorem 7** ([4], p. 44) *Let  $0 < \alpha < 1$ ,  $f \in AC([m, M])$ , and  $\|D_{t-}^{\alpha} f\|_{\infty, [m, t]}$ ,  $\|D_{*t}^{\alpha} f\|_{\infty, [t, M]} < \infty$ ,  $\forall t \in [m, M]$ . Then*

$$\left| \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(z) dz - f(t) \right| \leq \frac{1}{(M-m)\Gamma(\alpha+2)} \left\{ \|D_{t-}^{\alpha} f\|_{\infty, [m, t]} (t-m)^{\alpha+1} + \|D_{*t}^{\alpha} f\|_{\infty, [t, M]} (M-t)^{\alpha+1} \right\} \leq \tag{9}$$

$$\frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha+2)} \max \left\{ \|D_{t-}^{\alpha} f\|_{\infty, [m, t]}, \|D_{*t}^{\alpha} f\|_{\infty, [t, M]} \right\} (M-m)^{\alpha}, \tag{10}$$

$\forall t \in [m, M]$ .

By property (P) and Theorem 7 we derive

**Theorem 8** *Let  $0 < \alpha < 1$ ,  $f \in AC([m, M])$ , and there exists  $K > 0$ , such that*

$$\|D_{t-}^{\alpha} f\|_{\infty, [m, t]}, \|D_{*t}^{\alpha} f\|_{\infty, [t, M]} \leq K, \quad \forall t \in [m, M]. \tag{11}$$

Then

$$\left| \left( \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(z) dz \right) 1_H - f(A) \right| \leq \frac{K}{(M-m)\Gamma(\alpha+2)} \left\{ (A-m1_H)^{\alpha+1} + (M1_H-A)^{\alpha+1} \right\} \leq \tag{12}$$

$$\left( \frac{K}{\Gamma(\alpha+2)} (M-m)^{\alpha} \right) 1_H. \tag{13}$$

We mention the Fink ([9]) inequality

**Theorem 9** *Let  $f^{(n-1)}$  be absolutely continuous on  $[m, M]$  and  $f^{(n)} \in L_{\infty}(m, M)$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then*

$$\left| f(s) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} F_k(s) - \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right| \leq \frac{\|f^{(n)}\|_{\infty}}{(n+1)!(M-m)} \left[ (M-s)^{n+1} + (s-m)^{n+1} \right], \quad \forall s \in [m, M], \tag{14}$$

where

$$F_k(s) := \binom{n-k}{k!} \left( \frac{f^{(k-1)}(m)(s-m)^k - f^{(k-1)}(M)(s-M)^k}{M-m} \right). \tag{15}$$

If  $n = 1$ , then  $\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} = 0$ .

Inequality (14) is sharp, in the sense that is attained by an optimal  $f$  for any  $s \in [m, M]$ .

By property (P) and Theorem 9 we obtain

**Theorem 10** Let  $f^{(n-1)}$  be absolutely continuous on  $[m, M]$  and  $f^{(n)} \in L_\infty(m, M)$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then

$$\left| f(A) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} F_k(A) - \left( \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right) 1_H \right| \leq \tag{16}$$

$$\frac{\|f^{(n)}\|_\infty}{(n+1)!(M-m)} \left[ (M1_H - A)^{n+1} + (A - m1_H)^{n+1} \right],$$

where

$$F_k(A) := \left( \frac{n-k}{k!} \right) \left( \frac{f^{(k-1)}(m)(A - m1_H)^k - f^{(k-1)}(M)(A - M1_H)^k}{M-m} \right). \tag{17}$$

If  $n = 1$ , then  $\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} F_k(A) = 0_H$ .

We use here the sequence  $\{B_k(t), k \geq 0\}$  of Bernoulli polynomials which is uniquely determined by the following identities:

$$\begin{aligned} B'_k(t) &= kB_{k-1}(t), \quad k \geq 1, \quad B_0(t) = 1 \\ \text{and} \\ B_k(t+1) - B_k(t) &= kt^{k-1}, \quad k \geq 0. \end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

The values  $B_k = B_k(0)$ ,  $k \geq 0$  are the known Bernoulli numbers.

We mention

**Theorem 11** ([3], p. 23) (see also [5]) Let  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be such that  $f^{(n-1)}$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , is a continuous function and  $f^{(n)}(t)$  exists and is finite for all but a countable set of  $t$  in  $(m, M)$  and that  $f^{(n)} \in L_\infty([m, M])$ .

Denote by

$$\Delta_n(s) := f(s) - \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt - \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{(M-m)^{k-1}}{k!} B_k \left( \frac{s-m}{M-m} \right) \left[ f^{(k-1)}(M) - f^{(k-1)}(m) \right], \tag{19}$$

$\forall s \in [m, M]$ .

Then

$$|\Delta_n(s)| \leq \frac{(M-m)^n}{n!} \left( \sqrt{\frac{(n!)^2}{(2n)!} |B_{2n}| + B_n^2 \left(\frac{s-m}{M-m}\right)} \right) \|f^{(n)}\|_\infty, \quad (20)$$

$\forall n \in \mathbb{N}; \forall s \in [m, M]$ .

Using the (P) property and Theorem 11 we derive:

**Theorem 12** *All terms and assumptions as in Theorem 11. Denote by*

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_n(A) &:= f(A) - \left( \frac{1}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right) 1_H - \\ &\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{(M-m)^{k-1}}{k!} B_k \left( \frac{A-m1_H}{M-m} \right) [f^{(k-1)}(M) - f^{(k-1)}(m)]. \end{aligned} \quad (21)$$

Then

$$|\Delta_n(A)| \leq \frac{(M-m)^n}{n!} \left( \sqrt{\left( \frac{(n!)^2}{(2n)!} |B_{2n}| \right) 1_H + B_n^2 \left( \frac{A-m1_H}{M-m} \right)} \right) \|f^{(n)}\|_\infty, \quad (22)$$

$\forall n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

Denote by (see [3], p. 24)

$$I_4(\lambda) := \begin{cases} \frac{16\lambda^5}{5} - 7\lambda^4 + \frac{14}{3}\lambda^3 - \lambda^2 + \frac{1}{30}, & 0 \leq \lambda \leq \frac{1}{2}, \\ -\frac{16\lambda^5}{5} + 9\lambda^4 - \frac{26\lambda^3}{3} + 3\lambda^2 - \frac{1}{10}, & \frac{1}{2} \leq \lambda \leq 1, \end{cases} \quad (23)$$

which is continuous in  $\lambda \in [0, 1]$ .

Also denote by

$$B := \left( \frac{A-m1_H}{M-m} \right)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} I_4\left(\frac{A-m1_H}{M-m}\right) &= I_4(B) = \\ &\begin{cases} \frac{16}{5}B^5 - 7B^4 + \frac{14}{3}B^3 - B^2 + \frac{1}{30}1_H, & 0_H \leq B \leq \frac{1}{2}1_H, \\ -\frac{16}{5}B^5 + 9B^4 - \frac{26B^3}{3} + 3B^2 - \frac{1}{10}1_H, & \frac{1}{2}1_H \leq B \leq 1_H. \end{cases} \end{aligned} \quad (24)$$

We mention

**Theorem 13** ([3], p. 25) *All terms and assumptions as in Theorem 11, case of  $n = 4$ . For every  $s \in [m, M]$  it holds*

$$|\Delta_4(s)| \leq \frac{(M-m)^4}{24} I_4(\lambda) \|f^{(4)}\|_\infty,$$

where  $I_4(\lambda)$  is given by (23) with

$$\lambda = \frac{s - m}{M - m}. \tag{25}$$

Furthermore we have that

$$|\Delta_4(s)| \leq \frac{(M - m)^4}{720} \|f^{(4)}\|_\infty, \tag{26}$$

$\forall s \in [m, M]$ .

Using property (P) and Theorem 13 we find

**Theorem 14** All terms and assumptions are according to Theorem 11-13. Then

$$|\Delta_4(A)| \leq \frac{(M - m)^4}{24} I_4\left(\frac{A - m1_H}{M - m}\right) \|f^{(4)}\|_\infty, \tag{27}$$

where  $I_4\left(\frac{A - m1_H}{M - m}\right)$  is given by (24).

Furthermore we have that

$$|\Delta_4(A)| \leq \left(\frac{(M - m)^4}{720} \|f^{(4)}\|_\infty\right) 1_H. \tag{28}$$

Next we follow [6].

Let  $(P_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  be a harmonic sequence of polynomials, that is  $P'_n = P_{n-1}$ ,  $P_0 = 1$ . Let  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be such that  $f^{(n-1)}$  is absolutely continuous for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Setting

$$\overline{F}_k = \frac{(-1)^k (n - k)}{M - m} \left[ P_k(m) f^{(k-1)}(m) - P_k(M) f^{(k-1)}(M) \right], \quad k = 1, \dots, n - 1, \tag{29}$$

and

$$k(t, s) = \begin{cases} t - m, & \text{if } t \in [m, s] \\ t - M, & \text{if } t \in (s, M], \end{cases} \tag{30}$$

we get that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{n} \left[ f(s) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-1)^k P_k(s) f^{(k)}(s) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \overline{F}_k \right] - \frac{1}{M - m} \int_m^M f(t) dt = & \tag{31} \\ \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{n(M - m)} \int_m^M P_{n-1}(t) k(t, s) f^{(n)}(t) dt, & \end{aligned}$$

$\forall s \in [m, M]$ . The above sums are defined to be zero for  $n = 1$ .

For the harmonic sequence of polynomials

$$P_k(t) = \frac{(t - s)^k}{k!}, \quad k \geq 0 \tag{32}$$

identity (31) collapses to the Fink identity, see [9].

We may rewrite generalized Fink identity (31) as follows:

$$f(s) = \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-1)^{k+1} P_k(s) f^{(k)}(s) + \tag{33}$$

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{(-1)^k (n-k)}{M-m} \left[ P_k(M) f^{(k-1)}(M) - P_k(m) f^{(k-1)}(m) \right] + \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{M-m} \int_m^M P_{n-1}(t) k(t,s) f^{(n)}(t) dt,$$

$\forall s \in [m, M], n \in \mathbb{N}$ , when  $n = 1$  the above sums are zero.

Next we integrate the representation formula (33) against projections  $E_s$  to derive the operator representation formula:

$$f(A) = \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-1)^{k+1} P_k(A) f^{(k)}(A) + \tag{34}$$

$$\left[ \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{(-1)^k (n-k)}{M-m} \left[ P_k(M) f^{(k-1)}(M) - P_k(m) f^{(k-1)}(m) \right] + \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right] 1_H + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{M-m} \int_{m-0}^M \left( \int_m^M P_{n-1}(t) k(t,s) f^{(n)}(t) dt \right) dE_s.$$

The sequence of polynomials

$$P_k(t) = \frac{1}{k!} \left( t - \frac{m+M}{2} \right)^k, \quad k \geq 0, \tag{35}$$

is also harmonic.

We mention

**Theorem 15** ([6]) *Let  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be such that  $f^{(n-1)}$  is absolutely continuous for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $f^{(n)} \in L_p([m, M])$ ,  $1 \leq p \leq \infty$ . Then*

$$\left| \left[ f(s) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-1)^k P_k(s) f^{(k)}(s) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} F_k \right] - \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right| \leq \tag{36}$$

$$\frac{1}{M-m} \|P_{n-1}(\cdot) k(\cdot, s)\|_{p', [m, M]} \|f^{(n)}\|_p,$$

where  $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{p'} = 1$ .

We observe that

$$\int_m^M |P_{n-1}(t) k(t, s)|^{p'} dt \leq \|P_{n-1}\|_{\infty, [m, M]}^{p'} \int_m^M |k(t, s)|^{p'} dt = \tag{37}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \|P_{n-1}\|_{\infty,[m,M]}^{p'} &\left[ \int_m^s (t-m)^{p'} dt + \int_s^M (M-t)^{p'} dt \right] = \\ &\|P_{n-1}\|_{\infty,[m,M]}^{p'} \left[ \frac{(s-m)^{p'+1} + (M-s)^{p'+1}}{p'+1} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore we obtain

$$\|P_{n-1}(\cdot)k(\cdot, s)\|_{p',[m,M]} \leq \|P_{n-1}\|_{\infty,[m,M]} \left[ \frac{(M-s)^{p'+1} + (s-m)^{p'+1}}{p'+1} \right]^{\frac{1}{p'}}. \tag{38}$$

Hence we have

**Theorem 16** Let  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be such that  $f^{(n-1)}$  is absolutely continuous for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $f^{(n)} \in L_p([m, M])$ ,  $1 \leq p \leq \infty$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} &\left| \left( f(s) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-1)^k P_k(s) f^{(k)}(s) \right) + \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \overline{F}_k \right) - \left( \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right) \right| \leq \\ &\left( \frac{\|f^{(n)}\|_p}{M-m} \|P_{n-1}\|_{\infty,[m,M]} \right) \left[ \frac{(M-s)^{p'+1} + (s-m)^{p'+1}}{p'+1} \right]^{\frac{1}{p'}}, \tag{39} \end{aligned}$$

$\forall s \in [m, M]$ , where  $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{p'} = 1$ .

We get the following operator inequality:

**Theorem 17** Let  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be such that  $f^{(n-1)}$  is absolutely continuous for some  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $f^{(n)} \in L_p([m, M])$ ,  $1 \leq p \leq \infty$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} &\left| \left( f(A) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} (-1)^k P_k(A) f^{(k)}(A) \right) + \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \overline{F}_k \right) 1_H - \right. \\ &\quad \left. \left( \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right) 1_H \right| \leq \\ &\left( \frac{\|f^{(n)}\|_p}{M-m} \|P_{n-1}\|_{\infty,[m,M]} \right) \left[ \frac{(M1_H - A)^{p'+1} + (A - m1_H)^{p'+1}}{p'+1} \right]^{\frac{1}{p'}}, \tag{40} \end{aligned}$$

where  $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{p'} = 1$ .

**Proof.** By (P) property and (39). ■

We give

**Corollary 18** (to Theorem 16) (see also [6]) We have

$$\left| \left[ f(s) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{(-1)^k}{k!} \left( s - \frac{m+M}{2} \right)^k f^{(k)}(s) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{(M-m)^{k-1} (n-k)}{k! 2^k} \left[ f^{(k-1)}(m) - (-1)^k f^{(k-1)}(M) \right] - \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right] \right| \leq \left( \frac{\|f^{(n)}\|_p (M-m)^{n-2}}{2^{n-1} (n-1)!} \right) \left[ \frac{(M-s)^{p'+1} + (s-m)^{p'+1}}{p'+1} \right]^{\frac{1}{p'}}, \quad (41)$$

$\forall s \in [m, M]$ , where  $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{p'} = 1$ .

**Proof.** Set  $P_k(t) = \frac{1}{k!} \left( t - \frac{m+M}{2} \right)^k$ ,  $k \geq 0$ , in Theorem 16. ■  
We finish with the operator inequality:

**Corollary 19** (to Theorem 17) We have

$$\left| \left[ f(A) + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{(-1)^k}{k!} \left( A - \left( \frac{m+M}{2} \right) 1_H \right)^k f^{(k)}(A) + \left( \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \frac{(M-m)^{k-1} (n-k)}{k! 2^k} \left[ f^{(k-1)}(m) - (-1)^k f^{(k-1)}(M) \right] \right) 1_H \right] - \left( \frac{n}{M-m} \int_m^M f(t) dt \right) 1_H \right| \leq \left( \frac{\|f^{(n)}\|_p (M-m)^{n-2}}{2^{n-1} (n-1)!} \right) \left[ \frac{(M1_H - A)^{p'+1} + (A - m1_H)^{p'+1}}{p'+1} \right]^{\frac{1}{p'}}, \quad (42)$$

where  $\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{p'} = 1$ .

**Proof.** By Corollary 18 and (P) property. ■

## References

- [1] G. Anastassiou, *Handbook of Analytic-Computational Methods in Applied Mathematics*, Chapman & Hall / CRC, Boca Raton, New York, 2000.
- [2] G. Anastassiou, *Quantitative Approximations*, Chapman & Hall / CRC, Boca Raton, New York, 2001.



- [3] G. Anastassiou, *Advanced Inequalities*, World Scientific, New Jersey, Singapore, 2011.
- [4] G. Anastassiou, *Advances on Fractional Inequalities*, Springer, New York, 2011.
- [5] L.J. Dedic, M. Matic, J. Pečarić, *On generalizations of Ostrowski inequality via some Euler-type identities*, *Mathematical Inequalities and Applications*, Vol. 3, No. 3, 2000, 337-353.
- [6] L.J. Dedic, J. Pečarić, N. Ujević, *On generalizations of Ostrowski inequality and some related results*, *Czechoslovak Math. J.* 53 (128), 2003, 173-189.
- [7] S.S. Dragomir, *Inequalities for functions of selfadjoint operators on Hilbert Spaces*, [ajmaa.org/RGMIA/monographs/InFuncOp.pdf](http://ajmaa.org/RGMIA/monographs/InFuncOp.pdf), 2011.
- [8] S. Dragomir, *Operator inequalities of Ostrowski and Trapezoidal type*, Springer, New York, 2012.
- [9] A.M. Fink, *Bounds on the deviation of a function from its averages*, *Czechoslovak Mathematical Journal*, 42 (117), (1992), 289-310.
- [10] T. Furuta, J. Mičić Hot, J. Pečarić, Y. Seo, *Mond-Pečarić Method in Operator Inequalities. Inequalities for Bounded Selfadjoint Operators on a Hilbert Space*, Element, Zagreb, 2005.
- [11] G. Helmberg, *Introduction to Spectral Theory in Hilbert Space*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1969.
- [12] A. Ostrowski, *Über die Absolutabweichung einer differentiebaren Funktion von ihrem Integralmittelwert*, *Comment. Math. Helv.*, 10, 1938, 226-227.

# Integer and Fractional Self Adjoint Operator Opial type Inequalities

George A. Anastassiou  
Department of Mathematical Sciences  
University of Memphis  
Memphis, TN 38152, U.S.A.  
ganastss@memphis.edu

## Abstract

We present here several integer and fractional self adjoint operator Opial type inequalities to many directions. These are based in the operator order over a Hilbert space.

**2010 AMS Subject Classification:** 26A33, 26D10, 26D20, 47A60, 47A67.

**Key Words and Phrases:** Self adjoint operator, Hilbert space, Opial inequality, fractional derivative.

## 1 Motivation

In 1960, Z. Opial ([9]) proved the following famous inequality that motivates our work here.

Let  $f \in C^1([0, h])$  be such that  $f(0) = f(h) = 0$ , and  $f(t) > 0$  in  $(0, h)$ . Then

$$\int_0^h |f(t) f'(t)| dt \leq \frac{h}{4} \int_0^h (f'(t))^2 dt.$$

The constant  $\frac{h}{4}$  is the best.

In this article we present integer and fractional self adjoint operator Opial type inequalities on a Hilbert space in the operator order.

## 2 Background

Let  $A$  be a selfadjoint linear operator on a complex Hilbert space  $(H; \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$ . The Gelfand map establishes a  $*$ -isometrically isomorphism  $\Phi$  between the set  $C(Sp(A))$  of all continuous functions defined on the spectrum of  $A$ , denoted

$Sp(A)$ , and the  $C^*$ -algebra  $C^*(A)$  generated by  $A$  and the identity operator  $1_H$  on  $H$  as follows (see e.g. [6, p. 3]):

For any  $f, g \in C(Sp(A))$  and any  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{C}$  we have

- (i)  $\Phi(\alpha f + \beta g) = \alpha\Phi(f) + \beta\Phi(g)$ ;
- (ii)  $\Phi(fg) = \Phi(f)\Phi(g)$  (the operation composition is on the right) and  $\Phi(\bar{f}) = (\Phi(f))^*$ ;
- (iii)  $\|\Phi(f)\| = \|f\| := \sup_{t \in Sp(A)} |f(t)|$ ;
- (iv)  $\Phi(f_0) = 1_H$  and  $\Phi(f_1) = A$ , where  $f_0(t) = 1$  and  $f_1(t) = t$ , for  $t \in Sp(A)$ .

With this notation we define

$$f(A) := \Phi(f), \text{ for all } f \in C(Sp(A)),$$

and we call it the continuous functional calculus for a selfadjoint operator  $A$ .

If  $A$  is a selfadjoint operator and  $f$  is a real valued continuous function on  $Sp(A)$  then  $f(t) \geq 0$  for any  $t \in Sp(A)$  implies that  $f(A) \geq 0$ , i.e.  $f(A)$  is a positive operator on  $H$ . Moreover, if both  $f$  and  $g$  are real valued continuous functions on  $Sp(A)$  then the following important property holds:

(P)  $f(t) \geq g(t)$  for any  $t \in Sp(A)$ , implies that  $f(A) \geq g(A)$  in the operator order of  $B(H)$ . (the Banach algebra of all bounded linear operators from  $H$  into itself).

Equivalently, we use (see [5], pp. 7-8):

Let  $U$  be a selfadjoint operator on the complex Hilbert space  $(H, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$  with the spectrum  $Sp(U)$  included in the interval  $[m, M]$  for some real numbers  $m < M$  and  $\{E_\lambda\}_\lambda$  be its spectral family.

Then for any continuous function  $f : [m, M] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , it is well known that we have the following spectral representation in terms of the Riemann-Stieljes integral:

$$\langle f(U)x, y \rangle = \int_{m-0}^M f(\lambda) d(\langle E_\lambda x, y \rangle),$$

for any  $x, y \in H$ . The function  $g_{x,y}(\lambda) := \langle E_\lambda x, y \rangle$  is of bounded variation on the interval  $[m, M]$ , and

$$g_{x,y}(m-0) = 0 \text{ and } g_{x,y}(M) = \langle x, y \rangle,$$

for any  $x, y \in H$ . Furthermore, it is known that  $g_x(\lambda) := \langle E_\lambda x, x \rangle$  is increasing and right continuous on  $[m, M]$ .

We have also the formula

$$\langle f(U)x, x \rangle = \int_{m-0}^M f(\lambda) d(\langle E_\lambda x, x \rangle), \quad \forall x \in H.$$

As a symbol we can write

$$f(U) = \int_{m-0}^M f(\lambda) dE_\lambda.$$

Above,  $m = \min \{\lambda | \lambda \in Sp(U)\} := \min Sp(U)$ ,  $M = \max \{\lambda | \lambda \in Sp(U)\} := \max Sp(U)$ . The projections  $\{E_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}}$ , are called the spectral family of  $A$ , with the properties:

- (a)  $E_\lambda \leq E_{\lambda'}$  for  $\lambda \leq \lambda'$ ;
- (b)  $E_{m-0} = 0_H$  (zero operator),  $E_M = 1_H$  (identity operator) and  $E_{\lambda+0} = E_\lambda$  for all  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Furthermore

$$E_\lambda := \varphi_\lambda(U), \quad \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{R},$$

is a projection which reduces  $U$ , with

$$\varphi_\lambda(s) := \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } -\infty < s \leq \lambda, \\ 0, & \text{for } \lambda < s < +\infty. \end{cases}$$

The spectral family  $\{E_\lambda\}_{\lambda \in \mathbb{R}}$  determines uniquely the self-adjoint operator  $U$  and vice versa.

For more on the topic see [8], pp. 256-266, and for more details see there pp. 157-266. See also [4].

Some more basics are given (we follow [5], pp. 1-5):

Let  $(H; \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$  be a Hilbert space over  $\mathbb{C}$ . A bounded linear operator  $A$  defined on  $H$  is selfjoint, i.e.,  $A = A^*$ , iff  $\langle Ax, x \rangle \in \mathbb{R}, \forall x \in H$ , and if  $A$  is selfadjoint, then

$$\|A\| = \sup_{x \in H: \|x\|=1} |\langle Ax, x \rangle|.$$

Let  $A, B$  be selfadjoint operators on  $H$ . Then  $A \leq B$  iff  $\langle Ax, x \rangle \leq \langle Bx, x \rangle, \forall x \in H$ .

In particular,  $A$  is called positive if  $A \geq 0$ .

Denote by

$$\mathcal{P} := \left\{ \varphi(s) := \sum_{k=0}^n \alpha_k s^k \mid n \geq 0, \alpha_k \in \mathbb{C}, 0 \leq k \leq n \right\}.$$

If  $A \in \mathcal{B}(H)$  is selfadjoint, and  $\varphi(s) \in \mathcal{P}$  has real coefficients, then  $\varphi(A)$  is selfadjoint, and

$$\|\varphi(A)\| = \max \{ |\varphi(\lambda)|, \lambda \in Sp(A) \}.$$

If  $\varphi$  is any function defined on  $\mathbb{R}$  we define

$$\|\varphi\|_A := \sup \{ |\varphi(\lambda)|, \lambda \in Sp(A) \}.$$

If  $A$  is selfadjoint operator on Hilbert space  $H$  and  $\varphi$  is continuous and given that  $\varphi(A)$  is selfadjoint, then  $\|\varphi(A)\| = \|\varphi\|_A$ . And if  $\varphi$  is a continuous real valued function so it is  $|\varphi|$ , then  $\varphi(A)$  and  $|\varphi|(A) = |\varphi(A)|$  are selfadjoint operators (by [5], p. 4, Theorem 7).

Hence it holds

$$\begin{aligned} \|\varphi(A)\| &= \|\varphi\|_A = \sup \{ \|\varphi(\lambda)\|, \lambda \in Sp(A) \} \\ &= \sup \{ |\varphi(\lambda)|, \lambda \in Sp(A) \} = \|\varphi\|_A = \|\varphi(A)\|, \end{aligned}$$

that is

$$\|\varphi(A)\| = \|\varphi(A)\|.$$

For a selfadjoint operator  $A \in \mathcal{B}(H)$  which is positive, there exists a unique positive selfadjoint operator  $B := \sqrt{A} \in \mathcal{B}(H)$  such that  $B^2 = A$ , that is  $(\sqrt{A})^2 = A$ . We call  $B$  the square root of  $A$ .

Let  $A \in \mathcal{B}(H)$ , then  $A^*A$  is selfadjoint and positive. Define the "operator absolute value"  $|A| := \sqrt{A^*A}$ . If  $A = A^*$ , then  $|A| = \sqrt{A^2}$ .

For a continuous real valued function  $\varphi$  we observe the following:

$$|\varphi(A)| \text{ (the functional absolute value)} = \int_{m-0}^M |\varphi(\lambda)| dE_\lambda =$$

$$\int_{m-0}^M \sqrt{(\varphi(\lambda))^2} dE_\lambda = \sqrt{(\varphi(A))^2} = |\varphi(A)| \text{ (operator absolute value),}$$

where  $A$  is a selfadjoint operator.

That is we have

$$|\varphi(A)| \text{ (functional absolute value)} = |\varphi(A)| \text{ (operator absolute value).}$$

### 3 Main Results

Let  $A$  be a selfadjoint operator in the Hilbert space  $H$  with the spectrum  $Sp(A) \subseteq [m, M]$ ,  $m < M$ ;  $m, M \in \mathbb{R}$ .

In the next we obtain Opial type inequalities, both integer and fractional cases, in the operator order of  $\mathcal{B}(H)$  (the Banach algebra of all bounded linear operators from  $H$  into itself).

Let the real valued function  $f \in C([m, M])$ , and we consider

$$g(t) = \int_m^t f(z) dz, \quad \forall t \in [m, M], \tag{1}$$

then  $g \in C([m, M])$ .

We denote by

$$\int_{m1_H}^A f := \Phi(g) = g(A). \tag{2}$$

We understand and write that ( $r > 0$ )

$$g^r(A) = \Phi(g^r) =: \left( \int_{m1_H}^A f \right)^r.$$

Clearly  $\left( \int_{m1_H}^A f \right)^r$  is a self adjoint operator on  $H$ , for any  $r > 0$ .

All of our functions in this article will be real valued. From [3] we mention the following basic version of Opial inequality:

**Theorem 1** *Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$  with  $f(m) = 0$ . Then*

$$\int_m^\lambda |f(t)| |f'(t)| dt \leq \left( \frac{\lambda - m}{2} \right) \int_m^\lambda (f'(t))^2 dt, \quad \forall \lambda \in [m, M]. \tag{3}$$

*When  $f(t) = t - m$ ,  $t \in [m, M]$ , inequality (3) becomes equality.*

By applying properties (P) and (ii) to (3) we obtain

**Theorem 2** *Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$  with  $f(m) = 0$ . Then*

$$\int_{m1_H}^A |ff'| \leq \frac{1}{2} (A - m1_H) \left( \int_{m1_H}^A (f')^2 \right). \tag{4}$$

We mention

**Theorem 3** ([3]) *Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$  with  $f(m) = 0$ , and  $1 \leq p \leq 2$ . Then*

$$\int_m^\lambda |f(t)|^p |f'(t)|^p dt \leq K(p) (\lambda - m) \left( \int_m^\lambda (f'(t))^2 dt \right)^p, \quad \forall \lambda \in [m, M], \tag{5}$$

where

$$K(p) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}, & p = 1, \\ \frac{4}{\pi^2}, & p = 2, \\ \left( \frac{2-p}{2p} \right) \left( \frac{1}{p} \right)^{2p-2} I^{-p}, & 1 < p < 2, \end{cases} \tag{6}$$

with

$$I = \int_0^1 \left\{ 1 + \frac{2(p-1)}{2-p} z \right\}^{-2} \{1 + (p-1)z\}^{\frac{1}{p}-1} dz.$$

*For  $p = 1$ , equality holds in (5) only for  $f$  linear.*

By applying properties (P) and (ii) to (5) we derive

**Theorem 4** Here all are as in Theorem 3. It holds

$$\int_{m1_H}^A |ff'|^p \leq K(p)(A - m1_H) \left( \int_{m1_H}^A (f')^2 \right)^p. \tag{7}$$

We mention

**Theorem 5** ([7]) Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$  with  $f(m) = 0$ , and  $p, q \geq 1$ . Then

$$\int_m^\lambda |f(t)|^p |f'(t)|^q dt \leq \left( \frac{q}{p+q} \right) (\lambda - m)^p \int_m^\lambda |f'(t)|^{p+q} dt, \quad \forall \lambda \in [m, M]. \tag{8}$$

By applying properties (P) and (ii) to (8) we find

**Theorem 6** Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$  with  $f(m) = 0$ , and  $p, q \geq 1$ . Then

$$\int_{m1_H}^A |f|^p |f'|^q \leq \left( \frac{q}{p+q} \right) (A - m1_H)^p \left( \int_{m1_H}^A |f'|^{p+q} \right). \tag{9}$$

We mention

**Theorem 7** ([11]) Let  $p > -1$ . Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$ , and  $f(m) = 0$ . Then

$$\int_m^\lambda t^p |f(t) f'(t)| dt \leq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{p+1}} \int_m^\lambda (\lambda^{p+1} - mt^p) (f'(t))^2 dt \tag{10}$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{p+1}} \int_m^\lambda (M^{p+1} - mt^p) (f'(t))^2 dt, \quad \forall \lambda \in [m, M]. \tag{11}$$

(inequality (11) is our derivation).

By applying properties (P) and (ii) to (10), (11) we obtain

**Theorem 8** Let  $p > -1$ . Let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$  and  $f(m) = 0$ . Then

$$\int_{m1_H}^A (id)^p |ff'| \leq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{p+1}} \left( \int_{m1_H}^A (M^{p+1} - m(id)^p) (f')^2 \right). \tag{12}$$

We mention

**Theorem 9** ([1], p. 20) Let  $q(t)$  be positive continuous and non-increasing function on  $[m, M]$ . Further, let  $f \in C^1([m, M])$ , and  $f(m) = 0$ . Let  $l \geq 0$ ,  $w \geq 1$ . Then

$$\int_m^\lambda q(t) |f(t)|^l |f'(t)|^w dt \leq \left( \frac{w}{l+w} \right) (\lambda - m)^l \int_m^\lambda q(t) |f'(t)|^{l+w} dt, \tag{13}$$

$\forall \lambda \in [m, M]$ .

By applying property (P) and (ii) to (13) we obtain

**Theorem 10** *All as in Theorem 9. Then*

$$\int_{m1_H}^A q |f|^l |f'|^w \leq \left(\frac{w}{l+w}\right) (A - m1_H)^l \int_{m1_H}^A q |f'|^{l+w}. \quad (14)$$

We mention

**Theorem 11** *(see [1], p. 68) Let  $q(t)$  positive, continuous and non-increasing on  $[m, M]$ . Further let  $f_1, f_2 \in C^1([m, M])$  with  $f_1(m) = f_2(m) = 0$ . Let  $l \geq 0, w \geq 1$ . Then*

$$\int_m^\lambda q(t) |f_1(t) f_2(t)|^l [|f_1(t) f_2'(t)|^w + |f_1'(t) f_2(t)|^w] dt \leq \frac{w}{2(l+w)} (\lambda - m)^{2l+w} \int_m^\lambda q(t) [(f_1'(t))^{2(l+w)} + (f_2'(t))^{2(l+w)}] dt, \quad (15)$$

$\forall \lambda \in [m, M]$ .

By applying property (P) and (ii) to (15) we obtain

**Theorem 12** *All as in Theorem 11. Then*

$$\int_{m1_H}^A q |f_1 f_2|^l [|f_1 f_2'|^w + |f_1' f_2|^w] \leq \frac{w}{2(l+w)} (A - m1_H)^{2l+w} \int_{m1_H}^A q [(f_1')^{2(l+w)} + (f_2')^{2(l+w)}]. \quad (16)$$

We mention

**Theorem 13** *([10], p. 308) Let  $f \in C^n([m, M])$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $f^{(i)}(m) = 0$ , for  $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$ . Then*

$$\int_m^\lambda |f(t) f^{(n)}(t)| dt \leq \frac{(\lambda - m)^n}{2} \int_m^\lambda (f^{(n)}(t))^2 dt, \quad \forall \lambda \in [m, M]. \quad (17)$$

Using properties (P) and (ii) on (17) we derive

**Theorem 14** *All as in Theorem 13. Then*

$$\int_{m1_H}^A |f \cdot f^{(n)}| \leq \frac{(A - m1_H)^n}{2} \left( \int_{m1_H}^A (f^{(n)})^2 \right). \quad (18)$$

We mention from [10], p. 309



**Theorem 15** Let  $f_1, f_2 \in C^n([m, M])$  such that  $f_1^{(k)}(m) = f_2^{(k)}(m) = 0$ , for  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$ ,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then

$$\int_m^\lambda \left[ \left| f_1(t) f_2^{(n)}(t) \right| + \left| f_2(t) f_1^{(n)}(t) \right| \right] dt \leq B(\lambda - m)^n \int_m^\lambda \left[ \left( f_1^{(n)}(t) \right)^2 + \left( f_2^{(n)}(t) \right)^2 \right] dt, \quad \forall \lambda \in [m, M], \quad (19)$$

where

$$B = \frac{1}{2n!} \left( \frac{n}{2n - 1} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (20)$$

Using (19) and properties (P) and (ii) we obtain

**Theorem 16** All as in Theorem 15. Then

$$\int_{m1_H}^A \left[ \left| f_1 f_2^{(n)} \right| + \left| f_2 f_1^{(n)} \right| \right] \leq B(A - m1_H)^n \left( \int_{m1_H}^A \left( \left( f_1^{(n)} \right)^2 + \left( f_2^{(n)} \right)^2 \right) \right). \quad (21)$$

Here we follow [2], p. 8.

**Definition 17** Let  $\nu > 0$ ,  $n := [\nu]$  (integral part), and  $\alpha := \nu - n$  ( $0 < \alpha < 1$ ). Let  $f \in C([m, M])$  and define

$$(J_\nu^m f)(z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\nu)} \int_m^z (z - t)^{\nu-1} f(t) dt, \quad (22)$$

all  $m \leq z \leq M$ , where  $\Gamma$  is the gamma function, the generalized Riemann-Liouville integral. We define the subspace  $C_m^\nu([m, M])$  of  $C^n([m, M])$ :

$$C_m^\nu([m, M]) := \left\{ f \in C^n([m, M]) : J_{1-\alpha}^m f^{(n)} \in C^1([m, M]) \right\}. \quad (23)$$

So let  $f \in C_m^\nu([m, M])$ ; we define the generalized  $\nu$ -fractional derivative (of Canavati type) of  $f$  over  $[m, M]$  as

$$D_m^\nu f := \left( J_{1-\alpha}^m f^{(n)} \right)'. \quad (24)$$

Notice that

$$\left( J_{1-\alpha}^m f^{(n)} \right)(z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(1 - \alpha)} \int_m^z (z - t)^{-\alpha} f^{(n)}(t) dt \quad (25)$$

exists for  $f \in C_m^\nu([m, M])$ , all  $m \leq z \leq M$ .

Also notice that  $D_m^\nu f \in C([m, M])$ .

We need

**Theorem 18** ([2], p. 15) Let  $f \in C_m^\nu([m, M])$ ,  $\nu \geq 1$  and  $f^{(i)}(m) = 0$ ,  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$ ,  $n := [\nu]$ . Here  $\lambda \in [m, M]$ , and  $l = 1, \dots, n - 1$ . Let  $p, q > 1 : \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1$ . Then

$$\int_m^\lambda |f^{(l)}(w)| |(D_m^\nu f)(w)| dw \leq \frac{2^{-\frac{1}{q}} (\lambda - m)^{\frac{(\nu p - l p - p + 2)}{p}}}{\Gamma(\nu - l) ((\nu p - l p - p + 1)(\nu p - l p - p + 2))^{\frac{1}{p}}} \left( \int_m^\lambda |(D_m^\nu f)(w)|^q dw \right)^{\frac{2}{q}}. \tag{26}$$

Using (26), properties (P) and (ii) we get

**Theorem 19** All as in Theorem 18. Then

$$\int_{m1_H}^A |f^{(l)}| |(D_m^\nu f)| \leq \frac{2^{-\frac{1}{q}} (A - m1_H)^{\frac{(\nu p - l p - p + 2)}{p}}}{\Gamma(\nu - l) ((\nu p - l p - p + 1)(\nu p - l p - p + 2))^{\frac{1}{p}}} \left( \int_{m1_H}^A |(D_m^\nu f)|^q \right)^{\frac{2}{q}}. \tag{27}$$

We need

**Theorem 20** ([2], p. 26) Let  $\gamma_1, \gamma_2 \geq 0$ ,  $\nu \geq 1$  be such that  $\nu - \gamma_1, \nu - \gamma_2 \geq 1$  and  $f \in C_m^\nu([m, M])$  with  $f^{(i)}(m) = 0$ ,  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$ ,  $n := [\nu]$ . Here  $\lambda \in [m, M]$ . Let  $q$  be a nonnegative continuous functions on  $[m, M]$ . Denote

$$Q(\lambda) := \left( \int_m^\lambda (q(w))^2 dw \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \forall \lambda \in [m, M]. \tag{28}$$

Then

$$\int_m^\lambda q(w) |D_m^{\gamma_1}(f)(w)| |D_m^{\gamma_2}(f)(w)| dw \leq K(q, \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \nu, \lambda, m) \left( \int_m^\lambda (D_m^\nu f(w))^2 dw \right), \tag{29}$$

where

$$K(q, \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \nu, \lambda, m) := \frac{Q(\lambda)}{\sqrt[3]{6}} \frac{1}{\Gamma(\nu - \gamma_1) \Gamma(\nu - \gamma_2)} \frac{(\lambda - m)^{2\nu - \gamma_1 - \gamma_2 - \frac{1}{2}}}{(\nu - \gamma_1 - \frac{5}{6})^{\frac{1}{6}} (\nu - \gamma_2 - \frac{5}{6})^{\frac{1}{6}} (4\nu - 2\gamma_1 - 2\gamma_2 - \frac{7}{3})^{\frac{1}{2}}}. \tag{30}$$

Using (30) and Remark 3.4 of [2], p. 26, and properties (P) and (ii) to obtain

**Theorem 21** *All terms and assumptions as in Theorem 20. Then*

$$\int_{m1_H}^A q |D_m^{\gamma_1}(f)| |D_m^{\gamma_2}(f)| \leq K(q, \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \nu, A, m) \left( \int_{m1_H}^A (D_m^\nu f)^2 \right), \quad (31)$$

where

$$K(q, \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \nu, A, m) := \frac{Q(A)}{\sqrt[3]{6}} \frac{1}{\Gamma(\nu - \gamma_1) \Gamma(\nu - \gamma_2)} \frac{(A - m1_H)^{2\nu - \gamma_1 - \gamma_2 - \frac{1}{2}}}{(\nu - \gamma_1 - \frac{5}{6})^{\frac{1}{6}} (\nu - \gamma_2 - \frac{5}{6})^{\frac{1}{6}} (4\nu - 2\gamma_1 - 2\gamma_2 - \frac{7}{3})^{\frac{1}{2}}}. \quad (32)$$

We need

**Theorem 22** ([2], p. 30) *Let  $\gamma \geq 0$ ,  $\nu \geq 1$ ,  $\nu - \gamma \geq 1$ , let  $q$  be a nonnegative continuous function on  $[m, M]$ . Let  $f \in C_m^\nu([m, M])$  with  $f^{(i)}(m) = 0$ ,  $i = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$ ,  $n := [\nu]$ . Let  $\lambda \in [m, M]$ . Call*

$$Q(\lambda) := \left( \int_m^\lambda (q(w))^2 (w - m)^{2\nu - 2\gamma - 1} dw \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad (33)$$

and

$$K(q, \gamma, \nu, \lambda, m) := \frac{Q(\lambda)}{\sqrt{2} (2\nu - 2\gamma - 1) \Gamma(\nu - \gamma)}. \quad (34)$$

Then

$$\int_m^\lambda q(w) |D_m^\gamma f(w)| |D_m^\nu f(w)| dw \leq K(q, \gamma, \nu, \lambda, m) \left( \int_m^\lambda ((D_m^\nu f)(w))^2 dw \right). \quad (35)$$

Using (33)-(35) and properties (P) and (ii) we derive

**Theorem 23** *All as in Theorem 22. Denote by*

$$K(q, \gamma, \nu, A, m) := \frac{Q(A)}{\sqrt{2} (2\nu - 2\gamma - 1) \Gamma(\nu - \gamma)}. \quad (36)$$

Then

$$\int_{m1_H}^A q |D_m^\gamma f| |D_m^\nu f| \leq K(q, \gamma, \nu, A, m) \left( \int_{m1_H}^A ((D_m^\nu f))^2 \right). \quad (37)$$

We need

**Theorem 24** ([2], p. 92) Let  $\nu \geq 1, \gamma_1, \gamma_2 \geq 0$ , such that  $\nu - \gamma_1 \geq 1, \nu - \gamma_2 \geq 1$ , and  $f_1, f_2 \in C_m^\nu([m, M])$  with  $f_1^{(i)}(m) = f_2^{(i)}(m) = 0, i = 0, 1, \dots, n-1, n := [\nu]$ . Here  $\lambda \in [m, M]$ . Let  $\lambda_\alpha, \lambda_\beta, \lambda_\nu \geq 0$ . Set

$$\rho(\lambda) := \frac{(\lambda - m)^{(\nu\lambda_\alpha - \gamma_1\lambda_\alpha + \nu\lambda_\beta - \gamma_2\lambda_\beta + 1)}}{(\nu\lambda_\alpha - \gamma_1\lambda_\alpha + \nu\lambda_\beta - \gamma_2\lambda_\beta + 1) (\Gamma(\nu - \gamma_1 + 1))^{\lambda_\alpha} (\Gamma(\nu - \gamma_2 + 1))^{\lambda_\beta}}. \tag{38}$$

Then

$$\int_m^\lambda \left[ |(D_m^{\gamma_1} f_1)(w)|^{\lambda_\alpha} |(D_m^{\gamma_2} f_2)(w)|^{\lambda_\beta} |(D_m^\nu f_1)(w)|^{\lambda_\nu} + |(D_m^{\gamma_2} f_1)(w)|^{\lambda_\beta} |(D_m^{\gamma_1} f_2)(w)|^{\lambda_\alpha} |(D_m^\nu f_2)(w)|^{\lambda_\nu} \right] dw \leq \frac{\rho(\lambda)}{2} \left[ \|D_m^\nu f_1\|_\infty^{2(\lambda_\alpha + \lambda_\nu)} + \|D_m^\nu f_1\|_\infty^{2\lambda_\beta} + \|D_m^\nu f_2\|_\infty^{2\lambda_\beta} + \|D_m^\nu f_2\|_\infty^{2(\lambda_\alpha + \lambda_\nu)} \right], \tag{39}$$

all  $m \leq \lambda \leq M$ .

Using (39) and properties (P) and (ii) we derive

**Theorem 25** All here as in Theorem 24. Set

$$\rho(A) := \frac{(A - m_{1H})^{(\nu\lambda_\alpha - \gamma_1\lambda_\alpha + \nu\lambda_\beta - \gamma_2\lambda_\beta + 1)}}{(\nu\lambda_\alpha - \gamma_1\lambda_\alpha + \nu\lambda_\beta - \gamma_2\lambda_\beta + 1) (\Gamma(\nu - \gamma_1 + 1))^{\lambda_\alpha} (\Gamma(\nu - \gamma_2 + 1))^{\lambda_\beta}}. \tag{40}$$

Then

$$\int_{m_{1H}}^A \left[ |(D_m^{\gamma_1} f_1)|^{\lambda_\alpha} |(D_m^{\gamma_2} f_2)|^{\lambda_\beta} |(D_m^\nu f_1)|^{\lambda_\nu} + |(D_m^{\gamma_2} f_1)|^{\lambda_\beta} |(D_m^{\gamma_1} f_2)|^{\lambda_\alpha} |(D_m^\nu f_2)|^{\lambda_\nu} \right] \leq \frac{\rho(A)}{2} \left[ \|D_m^\nu f_1\|_\infty^{2(\lambda_\alpha + \lambda_\nu)} + \|D_m^\nu f_1\|_\infty^{2\lambda_\beta} + \|D_m^\nu f_2\|_\infty^{2\lambda_\beta} + \|D_m^\nu f_2\|_\infty^{2(\lambda_\alpha + \lambda_\nu)} \right]. \tag{41}$$

We give

**Definition 26** ([2], p. 270) Let  $\nu > 0, n := [\nu]$  (ceiling of  $\nu$ ),  $f \in AC^n([m, M])$  (i.e.  $f^{(n-1)}$  is absolutely continuous on  $[m, M]$ , that is in  $AC([m, M])$ ). We define the Caputo fractional derivative

$$(D_{*m}^\nu f)(z) := \frac{1}{\Gamma(n - \nu)} \int_m^z (z - t)^{n-\nu-1} f^{(n)}(t) dt, \tag{42}$$

which exists almost everywhere for  $z \in [m, M]$ .

Notice that  $D_{*m}^0 f = f$ , and  $D_{*m}^n f = f^{(n)}$ .

We mention

**Theorem 27** ([2], p. 397) Let  $\nu \geq \gamma + 1, \gamma \geq 0$ . Call  $n := \lceil \nu \rceil$  and assume  $f \in C^n([m, M])$  such that  $f^{(k)}(m) = 0, k = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$ . Let  $p, q > 1 : \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1, m \leq \lambda \leq M$ . Then

$$\int_m^\lambda |(D_{*m}^\gamma f)(w)| |(D_{*m}^\nu f)(w)| dw \leq \frac{(\lambda - m)^{\frac{(p\nu - p\gamma - p + 2)}{p}}}{(\sqrt[p]{2}) \Gamma(\nu - \gamma) ((p\nu - p\gamma - p + 1)(p\nu - p\gamma - p + 2))^{\frac{1}{p}}} \left( \int_m^\lambda |D_{*m}^\nu f(w)|^q dw \right)^{\frac{2}{q}}. \tag{43}$$

**Note:** By Proposition 15.114 ([2], p. 388) we have that  $D_{*m}^\nu f, D_{*m}^\gamma f \in C([m, M])$ .

Using (43) and Properties (P) and (ii) we give

**Theorem 28** All as in Theorem 27. Then

$$\int_{m1_H}^A |(D_{*m}^\gamma f)| |(D_{*m}^\nu f)| \leq \frac{(A - m1_H)^{\frac{(p\nu - p\gamma - p + 2)}{p}}}{(\sqrt[p]{2}) \Gamma(\nu - \gamma) ((p\nu - p\gamma - p + 1)(p\nu - p\gamma - p + 2))^{\frac{1}{p}}} \left( \int_{m1_H}^A |D_{*m}^\nu f|^q \right)^{\frac{2}{q}}. \tag{44}$$

We need

**Theorem 29** ([2], p. 398) Let  $\nu \geq 2, k \geq 0, \nu \geq k + 2$ . Call  $n := \lceil \nu \rceil$  and  $f \in C^n([m, M]) : f^{(j)}(m) = 0, j = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$ . Let  $p, q > 1 : \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1, m \leq \lambda \leq M$ . Then

$$\int_m^\lambda |(D_{*m}^k f)(w)| |(D_{*m}^{k+1} f)(w)| dw \leq \frac{(\lambda - m)^{\frac{2(p\nu - pk - p + 1)}{p}}}{2(\Gamma(\nu - k))^2 (p\nu - pk - p + 1)^{\frac{2}{p}}} \left( \int_m^\lambda |D_{*m}^\nu f(w)|^q dw \right)^{\frac{2}{q}}. \tag{45}$$

Using (45) and Properties (P) and (ii) we find

**Theorem 30** All as in Theorem 29. Then

$$\int_{m1_H}^A |(D_{*m}^k f)| |(D_{*m}^{k+1} f)| \leq \frac{(A - m1_H)^{\frac{2(p\nu - pk - p + 1)}{p}}}{2(\Gamma(\nu - k))^2 (p\nu - pk - p + 1)^{\frac{2}{p}}} \left( \int_{m1_H}^A |D_{*m}^\nu f|^q \right)^{\frac{2}{q}}. \tag{46}$$

We need

**Theorem 31** ([2], p. 399) *Let  $\gamma_i \geq 0, \nu \geq 1, \nu - \gamma_i \geq 1; i = 1, \dots, l, n := [\nu]$ , and  $f \in C^n([m, M])$  such that  $f^{(k)}(m) = 0, k = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$ . Here  $m \leq \lambda \leq M; q_1(\lambda), q_2(\lambda)$  continuous functions on  $[m, M]$  such that  $q_1(\lambda) \geq 0, q_2(\lambda) > 0$  on  $[m, M]$ , and  $r_i > 0 : \sum_{i=1}^l r_i = r$ . Let  $s_1, s'_1 > 1 : \frac{1}{s_1} + \frac{1}{s'_1} = 1$  and  $s_2, s'_2 > 1 : \frac{1}{s_2} + \frac{1}{s'_2} = 1$ , and  $p > s_2$ .*

Denote by

$$Q_1(\lambda) := \left( \int_m^\lambda (q_1(w))^{s'_1} dw \right)^{\frac{1}{s_1}} \tag{47}$$

and

$$Q_2(\lambda) := \left( \int_m^\lambda (q_2(w))^{\frac{-s'_2}{p}} dw \right)^{\frac{r}{s_2}}, \tag{48}$$

$$\sigma := \frac{p - s_2}{ps_2}. \tag{49}$$

Then

$$\int_m^\lambda q_1(w) \prod_{i=1}^l |D_{*m}^{\gamma_i} f(w)|^{r_i} dw \leq Q_1(\lambda) Q_2(\lambda) \prod_{i=1}^l \left\{ \frac{\sigma^{r_i \sigma}}{(\Gamma(\nu - \gamma_i))^{r_i} (\nu - \gamma_i - 1 + \sigma)^{r_i \sigma}} \right\} \cdot \frac{(\lambda - m)^{(\sum_{i=1}^l (\nu - \gamma_i - 1)r_i + \sigma r) + \frac{1}{s_1}}}{\left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^l (\nu - \gamma_i - 1)r_i s_1 \right) + r s_1 \sigma + 1 \right)^{\frac{1}{s_1}}} \left( \int_m^\lambda q_2(w) |D_{*m}^\nu f(w)|^p dw \right)^{\frac{r}{p}}. \tag{50}$$

Using (50) and properties (P) and (ii) we obtain

**Theorem 32** *All here as in Theorem 31. Set*

$$Q_1(A) := \left( \int_{m1_H}^A (q_1)^{s'_1} \right)^{\frac{1}{s_1}} \tag{51}$$

and

$$Q_2(A) := \left( \int_{m1_H}^A (q_2)^{\frac{-s'_2}{p}} \right)^{\frac{r}{s_2}}. \tag{52}$$

Then

$$\int_{m1_H}^A q_1 \prod_{i=1}^l |D_{*m}^{\gamma_i} f|^{r_i} \leq$$

$$Q_1(A) Q_2(A) \prod_{i=1}^l \left\{ \frac{\sigma^{r_i \sigma}}{(\Gamma(\nu - \gamma_i))^{r_i} (\nu - \gamma_i - 1 + \sigma)^{r_i \sigma}} \right\} \cdot \frac{(A - m1_H)^{(\sum_{i=1}^l (\nu - \gamma_i - 1)r_i + \sigma r) + \frac{1}{s_1}}}{\left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^l (\nu - \gamma_i - 1)r_i s_1 \right) + r s_1 \sigma + 1 \right)^{\frac{1}{s_1}}} \left( \int_{m1_H}^A q_2 |D_{*m}^\nu f|^p \right)^{\frac{r}{p}}. \quad (53)$$

One can give many more operator Opial type (both integer and fractional) inequalities.

We choose to stop here.

## References

- [1] R.P. Agarwal and P.Y.H. Pang, *Opial Inequalities with Applications in Differential and Difference Equations*, Kluwer Academic Publisher, Dordrecht, Boston, London, 1995.
- [2] G. Anastassiou, *Fractional Differentiation Inequalities*, Springer, New York, 2009.
- [3] R.C. Brown and D.B. Hinton, *Opial's inequality and oscillation of 2nd order equations*, Proceedings AMS, Vol. 125, No. 4 (1997), 1123-1129.
- [4] S.S. Dragomir, *Inequalities for functions of selfadjoint operators on Hilbert Spaces*, [ajmaa.org/RGMIA/monographs/InFuncOp.pdf](http://ajmaa.org/RGMIA/monographs/InFuncOp.pdf), 2011.
- [5] S. Dragomir, *Operator inequalities of Ostrowski and Trapezoidal type*, Springer, New York, 2012.
- [6] T. Furuta, J. Mićić Hot, J. Pečarić, Y. Seo, *Mond-Pečarić Method in Operator Inequalities. Inequalities for Bounded Selfadjoint Operators on a Hilbert Space*, Element, Zagreb, 2005.
- [7] Gou-Sheng Yang, *On a certain result of Z. Opial*, Proc. Japan Acad., 42 (1966), 78-83.
- [8] G. Helmberg, *Introduction to Spectral Theory in Hilbert Space*, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1969.
- [9] Z. Opial, *Sur une inégalité*, Ann. Polon. Math., 8 (1960), 29-32.
- [10] B.G. Pachpatte, *Mathematical Inequalities*, Elsevier, North-Holland Mathematical Library, Vol. 67, Amsterdam, Boston, 2005.
- [11] W.C. Troy, *On the Opial-Olech-Beesack inequalities*, USA-Chile Workshop on Nonlinear Analysis, Electron. J. Diff. Eqns. Conf., 06 (2001), 297-301, <http://ejde.math.swt.edu> or <http://ejde.math.unt.edu>.

# Numerical solution of the generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled Korteweg-de Vries equation by Fourier Pseudospectral method

Abdur Rashid<sup>\*†</sup>, Dianchen Lu<sup>‡</sup>, Ahmad Izani Md.Ismail<sup>§</sup> and Muhammad Abbas<sup>¶</sup>

## Abstract

In this paper, an approximate solution of the generalized Hirota-Satsuma (HS) coupled Korteweg-de Vries (KdV) equation by the use of Fourier pseudospectral method is presented. A time discrete scheme is constructed by approximating the time derivative using forward difference formula, while the pseudospectral method is used in the space direction. The stability and convergence of the scheme are investigated using the energy method. The numerical results reveal that the Fourier pseudospectral method is a convenient, effective and accurate method to solve the generalized HS coupled KdV equation.

**Key words:** Generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled Korteweg-de Vries equation, Fourier pseudospectral method, Stability, Convergence.

## 1 Introduction

The generalized HS coupled KdV equations are as follows [1, 2]:

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^3 u}{\partial x^3} - 3u \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + 3 \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(vw), \quad x \in \Omega, t \in [0, T], \quad (1.1)$$

$$\frac{\partial v}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial^3 v}{\partial x^3} + 3u \frac{\partial v}{\partial x}, \quad x \in \Omega, t \in [0, T], \quad (1.2)$$

$$\frac{\partial w}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial^3 w}{\partial x^3} + 3u \frac{\partial w}{\partial x}, \quad x \in \Omega, t \in [0, T] \quad (1.3)$$

with initial conditions

$$u(x, 0) = f(x), \quad v(x, 0) = g(x), \quad w(x, 0) = h(x), \quad x \in \Omega, \quad (1.4)$$

and boundary conditions

$$u(-L, t) = u(L, t) = 0, \quad v(-L, t) = v(L, t) = 0, \quad w(-L, t) = w(L, t) = 0, \quad t \in [0, T], \quad (1.5)$$

where  $\Omega = [-L, L]$ . Hirota-Satsuma [1] introduced generalized the HS coupled KdV equations in 1976 and these equations are models of shallow water waves. The equations (1.1)–(1.5) have travelling wave solutions and multiple soliton solutions.

The equations (1.1)–(1.5) have attracted the attention of many researchers and a lot of work has already been carried out on solution methods. For example, the homotopy perturbation method (HPM) by Ganji and Rafei [3], homotopy analysis method (HAM) and Adomian's decomposition method (ADM) by Abbasbandy [4], modified extended tanh function method by Ali [5], direct algebraic method by Zhang Huiqun [6]. Rong Jihong et al. [7] used bifurcation theory technique. The auxiliary function method was used by Yang Feng and Hong-Qing [8], analytical technique by Ganji et al. [9], homogenous balance

<sup>\*</sup>Department of Mathematics, Gomal University, Dera Ismail Khan, Pakistan.

<sup>†</sup>Corresponding Author, e-mail: prof.rashid@yahoo.com

<sup>‡</sup>School of Sciences, Jiangsu University, Zhenjiang, Jiangsu, China

<sup>§</sup>School of Mathematical Sciences, University Sains Malaysia, Pinang, Malaysia

<sup>¶</sup>Department of Mathematics, University of Sargodha, Sargodha, Pakistan



method by Adel Raly et al. [10]. Jacobi elliptic functions expansion method by Baojin Hong [11]. Travelling wave solutions of the above equations investigated by Zuo and Zhang [12], Xie and Ding [13], Feng and Li [14]. A differential transform method (DTM) and reduced differential transform method (RDTM) was used by Reze and Malek [15], Hirota’s bilinear method and pfaffian techniques by Junchao Chen et al. [16], while the Lie group method was applied by Mina B. et al. [17].

### 1.1 A brief review of Fourier pseudospectral method

In the last two decades spectral methods have been extensively used in the field of numerical solution of nonlinear partial differential equations. The use of spectral methods for solving partial differential and integro-differential equations have the advantage that its accuracy is higher than other standard numerical methods. Spectral methods retain the exponential rate of convergence when the solutions of the problems is sufficiently smooth. Spectral methods have three different categories namely Galerkin method, collocation method and tau method. The pseudospectral method is a type of spectral method which is easy to apply for nonlinear partial differential equations with periodic boundary value problems. For a more detailed discussion of spectral methods, please see ([18, 19, 20, 21, 22]).

The Fourier pseudospectral method involves two steps. First, the discrete representation of the solution is constructed by using trigonometric polynomial to interpolate the solution at collocation points. Second, the equations for the discrete values of the solution are obtained from the original equations. This second step involves finding an approximation for the differential operator in terms of the discrete values of the solution at collocation points. For detailed, please see ([18, 19, 23, 26]).

### 1.2 The main aim of the paper

In this paper, a Fourier pseudospectral method is applied to solve the generalized HS coupled KdV equation. A finite difference method is used in the time direction and Fourier pseudospectral method in the space direction. The stability of the time discrete scheme and convergence of the approximate solution is investigated by the energy method [29]. Numerical results are shown to demonstrate the efficiency of the method. It should be noted that Darvishi et al. [27] solved the same equation by pseudospectral method and transformed the partial differential equation to ordinary differential equations. They found the numerical solution by using classical fourth-order Runge-Kutta method. There is no proof of stability and convergence. In our paper, we follow the approach of [23, 28].

The outline of the paper is as follows. In section 2 we present some preliminaries which will be used in next two sections. Section 3 is related to stability of the scheme for generalized Hirota-Satsuma (HS) coupled Korteweg-de Vries (KdV) equation. Convergence of the approximate solution is proved in section 4. Numerical results are presented for the applicability of the method section 5. Finally the conclusion is given in section 6.

## 2 Preliminaries

The inner product and norm are defined by  $(u, v) = \int_{\Omega} u(x)v(x)dx$  and  $\|u\|^2 = (u, u)$  respectively. The maximum norm is denoted by  $\|u\|_{\infty}$ . The periodic Sobolev space is defined by [23]:

$$H^1 = \left\{ u \in L^2(R) : \frac{du}{dx} \in L^2(R) \right\}, \quad H_p^1 = \{ u \in H^1(R) : u(x - L) = u(x + L) \}.$$

The Sobolev norm and semi-norms are defined by [23]:

$$\|u\| = (u, u)^{1/2}, \quad \|u\|_{H^1} = (\|u\|^2 + \|\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\|^2)^{1/2}, \quad |u|_k = |u|_{H^k} = \sum_{|\beta|=k} \left( \int_{\Omega} (D^{\beta}u)^2 dx \right)^{1/2}.$$

We define  $t_n = n\tau$ ,  $n = 0, 1, \dots, N$ , where  $\tau = T/N$  is the step size in time direction. The equation (1.1)–(1.3) is evaluated at the point  $(x, t_n)$ ,  $n = 0, 1, \dots, N$ . We denote  $u^n = u(x, t_n)$ ,  $v^n = v(x, t_n)$  and

$w^n = w(x, t_n)$ , then equation (1.1), (1.2) and (1.3) can be written as:

$$u^{n+1} = u^n + \tau \left( \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} u^n - 3u^n \frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} + 3 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (v^n w^n) \right) + \tau R_1^n, \tag{2.1}$$

$$v^{n+1} = v^n + \tau \left( -\frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} v^n + 3u^n \frac{\partial v^n}{\partial x} \right) + \tau R_2^n, \tag{2.2}$$

$$w^{n+1} = w^n + \tau \left( -\frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} w^n + 3u^n \frac{\partial w^n}{\partial x} \right) + \tau R_3^n, \tag{2.3}$$

where  $R_1^n$ ,  $R_2^n$ , and  $R_3^n$  are residual of the equation (2.1), (2.2) and (2.3) respectively. Furthermore  $|R_1^n| < C_1\tau$ ,  $|R_2^n| < C_2\tau$  and  $|R_3^n| < C_3\tau$  for some positive constants  $C_1$ ,  $C_2$  and  $C_3$ . By ignoring the small terms  $R_1^n$ ,  $R_2^n$  and  $R_3^n$  in the above equations, the time discrete scheme for the equation (2.1), (2.2) and (2.3) can be obtained as:

$$U^{n+1} = U^n + \tau \left( \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} U^n - 3U^n \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x} + 3 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (V^n W^n) \right), \tag{2.4}$$

$$V^{n+1} = V^n + \tau \left( -\frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} V^n + 3U^n \frac{\partial V^n}{\partial x} \right), \tag{2.5}$$

$$W^{n+1} = W^n + \tau \left( -\frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} W^n + 3U^n \frac{\partial W^n}{\partial x} \right), \tag{2.6}$$

where  $U^n = U(x, t_n)$ ,  $V^n = V(x, t_n)$  and  $W^n = W(x, t_n)$ . We present a lemma, which will be useful for the proof of stability and convergence.

**Lemma 2.1** ([24]). *If  $m \geq 1$ , and  $u, v \in H^m(\Omega)$ , there exists a constant  $C$  independent of  $u, v$  and  $N$ , such that*

$$\|uv\|_m \leq C \|u\|_m \|v\|_m.$$

### 3 Stability

Assume  $U^n(x, t)$  to be the approximate solution of  $u^n(x, t)$ ,  $V^n(x, t)$  to be the approximate solution of  $v^n(x, t)$  and  $W^n(x, t)$  be the approximate solution of  $w^n(x, t)$ . For simplicity we denote  $u^n = u^n(x, t)$  and similarly for other variables. Let

$$\tilde{u}^n = u^n - U^n, \quad \tilde{v}^n = v^n - V^n, \quad \tilde{w}^n = w^n - W^n.$$

Subtracting (2.4) from (2.1), (2.5) from (2.2) and (2.6) from (2.3) results in

$$\tilde{u}^{n+1} = \tilde{u}^n + \frac{\tau}{2} \frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} \tilde{u}^n - 3\tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x} \right) + 3\tau \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (v^n w^n - V^n W^n), \tag{3.1}$$

$$\tilde{v}^{n+1} = \tilde{v}^n + \tau \left( -\frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} \tilde{v}^n \right) + 3\tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial v^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial V^n}{\partial x} \right), \tag{3.2}$$

$$\tilde{w}^{n+1} = \tilde{w}^n + \tau \left( -\frac{\partial^3}{\partial x^3} \tilde{w}^n \right) + 3\tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial w^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial W^n}{\partial x} \right). \tag{3.3}$$

Taking the inner product of (3.1), (3.2) and (3.3) with  $\tilde{u}^{n+1}$ ,  $\tilde{v}^{n+1}$  and  $\tilde{w}^{n+1}$  respectively. By applying Cauchy-Schwartz inequality, algebraic and Young's inequalities, we have

$$(1 + 3\tau) \|\tilde{u}^{n+1}\|^2 + \tau \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{u}^{n+1}}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \leq \|\tilde{u}^n\|^2 + \tau \left\| \frac{\partial^2 \tilde{u}^n}{\partial x^2} \right\|^2 - 3\tau \left\| u^n \frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + 3\tau \|v^n w^n - V^n W^n\|^2, \tag{3.4}$$

$$(1 + 3\tau) \|\tilde{v}^{n+1}\|^2 + \tau \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{v}^{n+1}}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \leq \|\tilde{v}^n\|^2 + \tau \left\| \frac{\partial^2 \tilde{v}^n}{\partial x^2} \right\|^2 + 3\tau \left\| u^n \frac{\partial v^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial V^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2, \tag{3.5}$$

$$(1 + 3\tau)\|\tilde{w}^{n+1}\|^2 + \tau\left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{w}^{n+1}}{\partial x}\right\|^2 \leq \|\tilde{w}^n\|^2 + \tau\left\|\frac{\partial^2\tilde{w}^n}{\partial x^2}\right\|^2 + 3\tau\left\|u^n\frac{\partial w^n}{\partial x} - U^n\frac{\partial W^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2, \quad (3.6)$$

Now we are going to estimate nonlinear terms of (3.4), (3.5) and (3.6). Again we apply Cauchy-Schwartz inequality and lemma 2.1, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \left\|u^n\frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - U^n\frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}\right\| &= \left\|u^n\frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - u^n\frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x} + u^n\frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x} - U^n\frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}\right\| \\ &= \left\|u^n\left(\frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}\right) + \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}(u^n - U^n)\right\| \\ &\leq \|u^n\|_\infty\left\|\frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}\right\| + \left\|\frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}\right\|_\infty\|u^n - U^n\| \\ &\leq C_4\left(\left\|\frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}\right\| + \|u^n - U^n\|\right) \end{aligned}$$

where  $C_4 = (\|\frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}\|_\infty, \|u^n\|_\infty)$ , we obtain

$$\left\|u^n\frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - U^n\frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2 \leq C_4\left(\left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{u}^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2 + \|\tilde{u}^n\|^2\right)$$

Similarly we can apply Cauchy-Schwartz inequality and lemma 2.1, we get the estimation of nonlinear terms of (3.4), (3.5) and (3.6), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|v^n w^n - V^n W^n\|^2 &\leq C_5(\|\tilde{v}^n\|^2 + \|\tilde{w}^n\|^2) \\ \left\|u^n\frac{\partial v^n}{\partial x} - U^n\frac{\partial V^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2 &\leq C_6\left(\|\tilde{u}^n\|^2 + \left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{v}^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2\right), \\ \left\|u^n\frac{\partial w^n}{\partial x} - U^n\frac{\partial W^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2 &\leq C_7\left(\|\tilde{u}^n\|^2 + \left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{w}^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2\right). \end{aligned}$$

where  $C_5 = (\|\frac{\partial V^n}{\partial x}\|_\infty, \|u^n\|_\infty)$ ,  $C_6 = (\|\frac{\partial W^n}{\partial x}\|_\infty, \|u^n\|_\infty)$ , where  $C_7 = (\|v^n\|_\infty, \|W^n\|_\infty)$ . Substituting the value of above values into (3.4), (3.5) and (3.6). Further more  $\tilde{C} = \max(C_4, C_5, C_6, C_7)$ . We get

$$\begin{aligned} (1 - 3\tau)\left(\|\tilde{u}^{n+1}\|^2 + \left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{u}^{n+1}}{\partial x}\right\|^2 + \|\tilde{v}^{n+1}\|^2 + \left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{v}^{n+1}}{\partial x}\right\|^2 + \|\tilde{w}^{n+1}\|^2 + \left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{w}^{n+1}}{\partial x}\right\|^2\right) \\ \leq (1 + 3\tau)\tilde{C}\left(\|\tilde{u}^n\|^2 + \left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{u}^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2 + \|\tilde{v}^n\|^2 + \left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{v}^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2 + \|\tilde{w}^n\|^2 + \left\|\frac{\partial\tilde{w}^n}{\partial x}\right\|^2\right) \end{aligned} \quad (3.7)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \|\tilde{u}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{v}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{w}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 &\leq \left(\frac{(1 + 3\tau)\tilde{C}}{1 - 3\tau}\right)\left(\|\tilde{u}^n\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{v}^n\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{w}^n\|_{H^1}^2\right) \\ &\leq \left(\frac{(1 + 3\tau)\tilde{C}}{1 - 3\tau}\right)^2\left(\|\tilde{u}^{n-1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{v}^{n-1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{w}^{n-1}\|_{H^1}^2\right) \\ &\vdots \\ &\leq \left(\frac{(1 + 3\tau)\tilde{C}}{1 - 3\tau}\right)^{n+1}\left(\|\tilde{u}^0\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{v}^0\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{w}^0\|_{H^1}^2\right) \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{\tilde{C}(1 + 3\tau)}{1 - 3\tau}\right)^{n+1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{\tilde{C}(1 + \frac{3\tau}{n+1})}{1 - \frac{3\tau}{n+1}}\right)^{n+1} = \frac{\tilde{C}e^{3\tau}}{e^{-3\tau}} = e^{6\tilde{C}\tau} \quad (3.8)$$

Therefore

$$\|\tilde{u}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{v}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{w}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 \leq \sqrt{e^{6\tilde{C}\tau}} (\|\tilde{u}^0\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{v}^0\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{w}^0\|_{H^1}^2)$$

**Theorem 1.** *Let  $u_0, v_0$  and  $w_0$  belong to  $H^1(\Omega)$ . Further, let  $u^n, v^n$  and  $w^n$  be the solution for initial boundary value problem (1.1)–(1.5) and  $U^n, V^n$  and  $W^n$  be the solution of the time discrete scheme (2.4)–(2.6). If  $\tau < 1/3$  then solution of the discrete scheme is stable in  $H^1$  norm*

### 4 Convergence

In this section we consider the convergence of of approximate solution of generalized HS coupled KdV equation. Define

$$\tilde{U}^n = u^n - U^n, \quad \tilde{V}^n = v^n - V^n, \quad \tilde{W}^n = w^n - W^n.$$

From equations (2.1)–(2.3) and (2.4)–(2.6), we obtain

$$\tilde{U}^{n+1} = \tilde{U}^n + \frac{\tau}{2} \frac{\partial^3 \tilde{U}^n}{\partial x^3} + 3\tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x} \right) - 3\tau \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (v^n w^n - V^n W^n) + \tau R_1^n, \tag{4.1}$$

$$\tilde{V}^{n+1} = \tilde{V}^n + \tau \left( -\frac{\partial^3 \tilde{V}^n}{\partial x^3} \right) + 3\tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial v^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial V^n}{\partial x} \right) + \tau R_2^n, \tag{4.2}$$

$$\tilde{W}^{n+1} = \tilde{W}^n + \tau \left( -\frac{\partial^3 \tilde{W}^n}{\partial x^3} \right) + 3\tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial w^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial W^n}{\partial x} \right) + \tau R_3^n. \tag{4.3}$$

Taking the inner product of (4.1), (4.2) and (4.3) with  $\tilde{U}^{n+1}, \tilde{V}^{n+1}$  and  $\tilde{W}^{n+1}$  respectively, yields

$$\|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\|^2 \leq \frac{1}{2} \|\tilde{U}^n\|^2 - \frac{\tau}{2} \left( \left\| \frac{\partial^2 \tilde{U}^n}{\partial x^2} \right\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{U}^{n+1}}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \right) + \tau |R_1^n| \|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\| + G_1 + G_2, \tag{4.4}$$

$$\|\tilde{V}^{n+1}\|^2 \leq \frac{1}{2} \|\tilde{V}^n\|^2 + \frac{\tau}{2} \left( \left\| \frac{\partial^2 \tilde{V}^n}{\partial x^2} \right\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{V}^{n+1}}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \right) + \tau |R_2^n| \|\tilde{V}^{n+1}\| + G_3, \tag{4.5}$$

$$\|\tilde{W}^{n+1}\|^2 \leq \frac{1}{2} \|\tilde{W}^n\|^2 + \frac{\tau}{2} \left( \left\| \frac{\partial^2 \tilde{W}^n}{\partial x^2} \right\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{W}^{n+1}}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \right) + \tau |R_3^n| \|\tilde{W}^{n+1}\| + G_4, \tag{4.6}$$

where

$$G_1 = -3\tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x}, \tilde{U}^{n+1} \right), \quad G_2 = 3\tau \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (v^n w^n - V^n W^n, \tilde{U}^{n+1}),$$

$$G_3 = \tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial v^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial V^n}{\partial x}, \tilde{V}^{n+1} \right), \quad G_4 = 3\tau \left( u^n \frac{\partial w^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial W^n}{\partial x}, \tilde{W}^{n+1} \right).$$

By using the algebraic inequality and lemma 2.1, we get

$$|G_1| \leq 3\tau \left\| u^n \frac{\partial u^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial U^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + \|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\|^2 \leq C_8 \left( \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{u}^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + \|\tilde{u}^n\|^2 \right) + \|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\|^2, \tag{4.7}$$

$$|G_2| \leq 3\tau \|v^n w^n - V^n W^n\|^2 + \|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\|^2 \leq C_9 (\|\tilde{v}^n\|^2 + \|\tilde{w}^n\|^2) + \|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\|^2, \tag{4.8}$$

$$|G_3| \leq 3\tau \left\| u^n \frac{\partial v^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial V^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + \|\tilde{V}^{n+1}\|^2 \leq C_{10} \left( \|\tilde{u}^n\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{v}^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \right) + \|\tilde{V}^{n+1}\|^2, \tag{4.9}$$

$$|G_4| \leq 3\tau \left\| u^n \frac{\partial w^n}{\partial x} - U^n \frac{\partial W^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + \|\tilde{W}^{n+1}\|^2 \leq C_{11} \left( \|\tilde{u}^n\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{w}^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \right) + \|\tilde{W}^{n+1}\|^2, \tag{4.10}$$

where  $C_8, C_9, C_{10}$  and  $C_{11}$  are constants independent of  $\tau$  and  $N$ . Let  $\tilde{M} = \max(C_8, C_9, C_{10}, C_{11})$  Putting the values of (4.7) and (4.8) in to (4.4). Also substituting the values of (4.9) and (4.10) in to

(4.5) and (4.6) respectively. By using the same technique as in the previous section, we can obtain a equation similar to (3.7).

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (1-3\tau) \left( \|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{U}^{n+1}}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + \|\tilde{V}^{n+1}\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{V}^{n+1}}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + \|\tilde{W}^{n+1}\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{W}^{n+1}}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \right) \\
 & \leq (1+3\tau)\tilde{M} \left( \|\tilde{U}^n\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{U}^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + \|\tilde{V}^n\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{V}^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 + \|\tilde{W}^n\|^2 + \left\| \frac{\partial \tilde{W}^n}{\partial x} \right\|^2 \right) \tag{4.11} \\
 & + \tau\vartheta^2|R_1^n|^2 + \tau\vartheta^2|R_2^n|^2 + \tau\vartheta^2|R_3^n|^2. \\
 & \|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{V}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{W}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 \leq \left( \frac{(1+3\tau)\tilde{M}}{1-3\tau} \right) \left[ (\|\tilde{U}^n\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{V}^n\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{W}^n\|_{H^1}^2) \right. \\
 & \quad \left. + (\tau\vartheta^2|R_1^n|^2 + \tau\vartheta^2|R_2^n|^2 + \tau\vartheta^2|R_3^n|^2) \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\begin{aligned}
 \tilde{E}^{n+1} &= \|\tilde{U}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{V}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 + \|\tilde{W}^{n+1}\|_{H^1}^2 \\
 \tilde{R}^n &= \tau\vartheta^2(|R_1^n|^2 + |R_2^n|^2 + |R_3^n|^2)
 \end{aligned}$$

Then equation (4.11) is written as

$$\begin{aligned}
 \tilde{E}^{n+1} &\leq \left( \frac{(1+3\tau)\tilde{M}}{1-3\tau} \right) [\tilde{E}^n + \tau\vartheta^2\tilde{R}^n] \\
 &\leq \left( \frac{(1+3\tau)\tilde{M}}{1-3\tau} \right)^2 \tilde{E}^{n-1} + \left( \frac{(1+3\tau)\tilde{M}}{1-3\tau} \right) \tau\vartheta^2\tilde{R}^{n-1} + \tau\vartheta^2\tilde{R}^n \\
 &\vdots \\
 &\leq \left( \frac{(1+3\tau)\tilde{M}}{1-3\tau} \right)^n \tilde{E}^0 + \tau\vartheta^2 \sum_{j=0}^n \left( \frac{(1+3\tau)\tilde{M}}{1-3\tau} \right)^j \tilde{R}^{n-j}
 \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\tilde{E}^0 = 0$ , we obtain

$$\tilde{E}^{n+1} \leq (n+1)\tau\vartheta^2 \sum_{j=0}^n \left( \frac{(1+3\tau)\tilde{M}}{1-3\tau} \right)^j \tilde{R}^{n-j}$$

Finally, using the result of (3.8) we get

$$\|u^n - U^n\| + \|v^n - V^n\| + \|w^n - W^n\| \leq (n+1)\tau\vartheta^2 e^{6\tilde{M}t} |R^n| \leq \tilde{M} \sqrt{\vartheta^2 e^{6\tilde{M}t} \tau}$$

**Theorem 2.** *Let  $u^n, v^n$  and  $w^n$  be the solution for initial boundary value problem for (1.1)–(1.5) and let  $U^n, V^n$  and  $W^n$  be the solution of (2.4)–(2.6) time discrete scheme. If the conditions of Theorem 1 holds. Then the time discrete solution is convergent in  $H^1$  and the convergence rate is  $O(\tau)$ .*

## 5 Numerical Results

In this section, we present numerical results to show the efficiency and accuracy of the method, mentioned in previous section. We define maximum error  $\|E(u)\|_\infty, \|E(v)\|_\infty$  and  $\|E(w)\|_\infty$  as follows

$$\begin{aligned}
 \|E(u)\|_\infty &= \max_{0 \leq j \leq N} |u(x_j, t) - U(x_j, t)|, \\
 \|E(v)\|_\infty &= \max_{0 \leq j \leq N} |v(x_j, t) - V(x_j, t)|, \\
 \|E(w)\|_\infty &= \max_{0 \leq j \leq N} |w(x_j, t) - W(x_j, t)|,
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $u, v, w$  are the exact solutions of (1.1)–(1.5) and  $U, V, W$  are the approximate solutions.

### 5.1 Example 1

Consider the generalized HS coupled KdV equations (1.1)–(1.5) with the initial conditions [25]:

$$\begin{aligned}
 u(x, 0) &= \frac{\beta - 2\alpha^2}{3} + 2\alpha^2 \tanh^2(\alpha x), \\
 v(x, 0) &= \frac{4\alpha^2(\beta + \alpha^2)}{3c_1} \left( \frac{c_0}{c_1} - \tanh(\alpha x) \right), \\
 w(x, 0) &= c_0 + c_1 \tanh(\alpha x)
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $c_0, c_1, \alpha$  and  $\beta$  are arbitrary constants. For practical computation we choose the parameters as  $c_0 = 1.5, c_1 = 0.1, \alpha = 0.1, \beta = 1.5$  and  $N = 64$ .

The absolute error of the  $U, V$  and  $W$  are given in Table-1, Table-2 and Table-3 respectively. The results of the present method are compared with the results of methods already available in the literature i.e., Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13] for the variable  $U, V$  and  $W$  at different values of  $t$ . We observe that the absolute error is less than  $0.2 \times 10^{-6}$ . The numerical results of the present method are better than the results obtained by Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13]. The space-time graphs of  $U, V$  and  $W$  are given in Figure-1, Figure-2 and Figure-3 respectively. The graph of exact and approximate solution are plotted in Figure-1 to Figure-3 at different values of  $t$ .

Table 1: Comparison of numerical results of pseudospectral (present) method for Example-1 with the results obtained from Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13] for the variable  $U$  at different values of  $t$ .

t	DTM ([15])	RDTM ([15])	DTM ([13])	Present Method
0.1	3.290e-06	6.719e-10	6.739e-10	2.541e-06
0.4	5.252e-05	1.711e-07	1.719e-07	3.345e-07
0.7	1.597e-04	1.593e-06	1.603e-06	6.144e-07
1.0	3.227e-04	6.574e-06	6.625e-06	8.363e-07

Table 2: Comparison of numerical results of pseudospectral (present) method for Example-1 with the results obtained from Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13] for the variable  $V$  at different values of  $t$ .

t	DTM ([15])	RDTM ([15])	DTM ([13])	Present Method
0.1	8.559e-11	3.320e-13	8.828e-11	1.430e-08
0.4	1.698e-10	8.490e-11	3.818e-08	2.234e-08
0.7	8.793e-10	7.951e-10	5.028e-07	5.933e-08
1.0	3.389e-09	3.306e-09	2.689e-06	7.474e-08

Table 3: Comparison of numerical results of pseudospectral (present) method for Example-1 with the results obtained from Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13] for the variable  $W$  at different values of  $t$ .

t	DTM ([15])	RDTM ([15])	DTM ([13])	Present Method
0.1	5.349e-08	2.075e-10	4.385e-11	6.095e-08
0.4	1.061e-07	5.306e-08	1.896e-08	7.780e-08
0.7	5.496e-07	4.969e-07	2.497e-07	9.188e-08
1.0	2.118e-06	2.066e-06	1.335e-06	8.989e-08

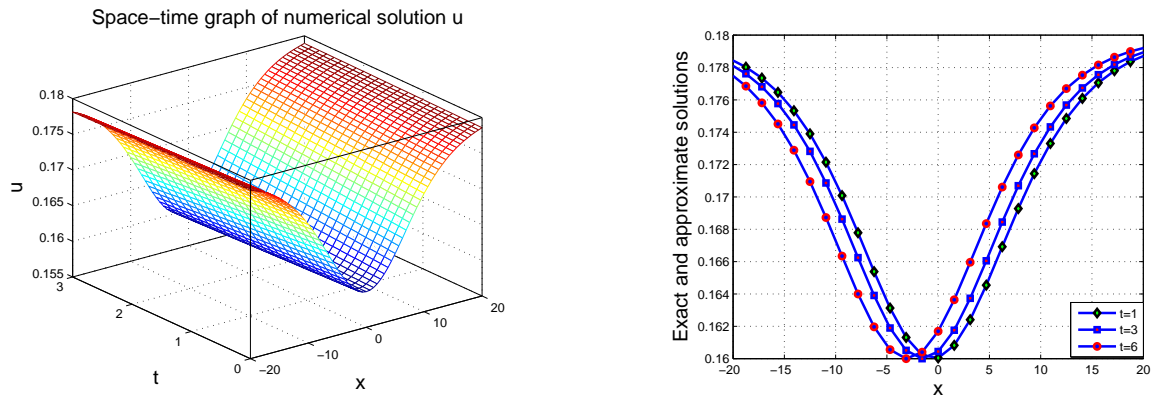


Figure 1: The left figure shows the space-time graphs of  $U$ , while the right figure shows the graph of  $U$  for different values of  $t$ .

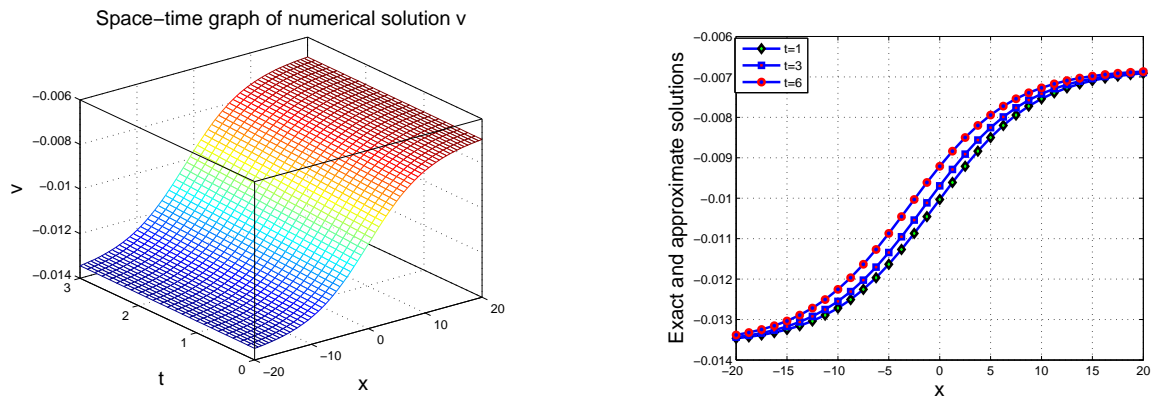


Figure 2: The left figure shows the space-time graphs of  $V$ , while the right figure shows the graph of  $V$  for different values of  $t$ .

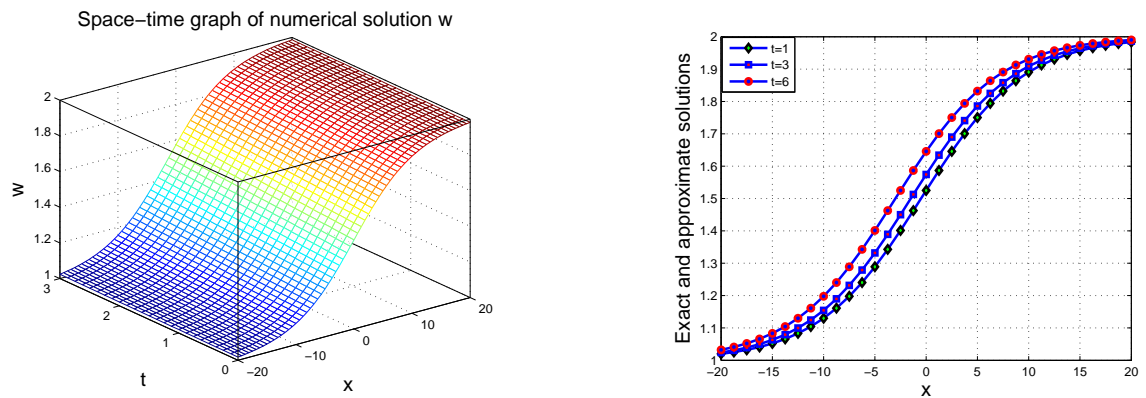


Figure 3: The left figure shows the space-time graphs of  $W$ , while the right figure shows the graph of  $W$  for different values of  $t$ .

### 5.2 Example 2

We consider the generalized HS coupled KdV equations (1.1)–(1.5) with the initial conditions [25]:

$$\begin{aligned}
 u(x, 0) &= \frac{\beta - 8\alpha^2}{3} + 4\alpha^2 \tanh^2(\alpha x), \\
 v(x, 0) &= -\frac{4}{3} \frac{\alpha^2(3\alpha^2 c_0 - 2\beta c_2 + 4\alpha^2 c_2)}{c_2^2} + \left( \frac{4\alpha^2}{c_2} \tanh^2(\alpha x) \right), \\
 w(x, 0) &= c_0 + c_2 \tanh^2(\alpha x)
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $c_0, c_1, c_2, \alpha$  and  $\beta$  are arbitrary constants. We choose the arbitrary constants for practical computation as,  $c_0 = 1.5, c_1 = 0.1, c_2 = 0.5, \alpha = 0.1, \beta = 1.5$  and  $N = 64$ .

The absolute error of  $U, V$  and  $W$  are given in Table-4, Table-5 and Table-6 respectively. we compare the results of the present method with Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13] for the variable  $U, V$  and  $W$  at different value of  $t$ . The results are already available in the literature. We observe that the absolute error is less than  $0.2 \times 10^{-6}$ . The numerical results of the present method are comparatively better than the results obtained from Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13]. The space-time graphs of  $U, V$  and  $W$  are given in Figure-4, Figure-5 and Figure-6 respectively. The graph of exact and approximate solution are shown in Figure-4 to Figure-6 at different value of  $t$ .

Table 4: Comparison of numerical results of pseudospectral (present) method for Example-1 with the results obtained from Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13] for the variable  $U$  at different values of  $t$ .

t	DTM ([15])	RDTM ([15])	DTM ([13])	Present Method
0.1	4.279e-09	1.660e-11	2.495e-05	3.762e-09
0.4	8.490e-09	4.245e-09	1.146e-04	4.677e-09
0.7	4.396e-08	3.975e-08	2.293e-04	5.366e-09
1.0	1.694e-07	1.653e-07	3.744e-04	7.595e-09

Table 5: Comparison of numerical results of pseudospectral (present) method for Example-1 with the results obtained from Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13] for the variable  $V$  at different values of  $t$ .

t	DTM ([15])	RDTM ([15])	DTM ([13])	Present Method
0.1	8.559e-11	3.320e-13	8.828e-11	1.430e-08
0.4	1.698e-10	8.490e-11	3.818e-08	2.234e-08
0.7	8.793e-10	7.951e-10	5.028e-07	5.933e-08
1.0	3.389e-09	3.306e-09	2.689e-06	7.474e-08

Table 6: Comparison of numerical results of pseudospectral (present) method for Example-1 with the results obtained from Reza and Malik [15], Xie and Ding [13] for the variable  $W$  at different values of  $t$ .

t	DTM ([15])	RDTM ([15])	DTM ([13])	Present Method
0.1	5.349e-08	2.075e-10	4.385e-11	6.095e-08
0.4	1.061e-07	5.306e-08	1.896e-08	7.780e-08
0.7	5.496e-07	4.969e-07	2.497e-07	9.188e-08
1.0	2.118e-06	2.066e-06	1.335e-06	8.989e-08



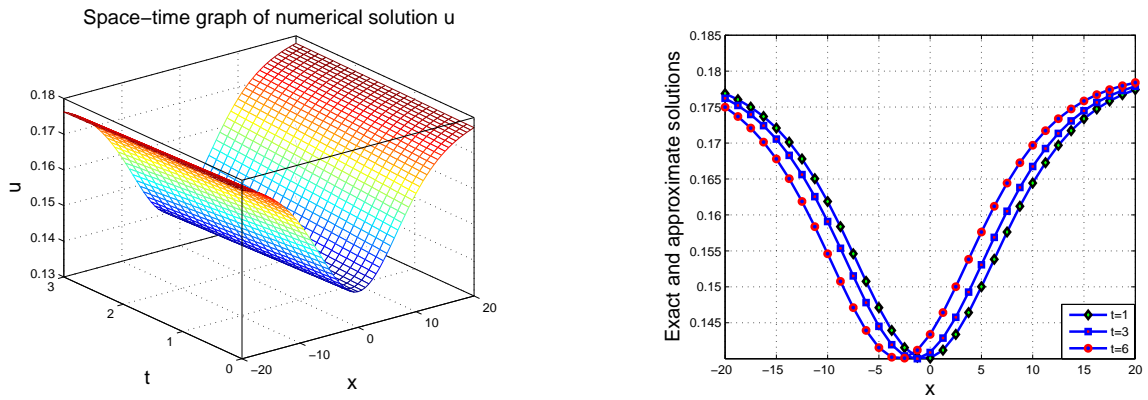


Figure 4: The left figure shows the space-time graphs of  $U$ , while the right figure shows the graph of  $U$  for different values of  $t$ .

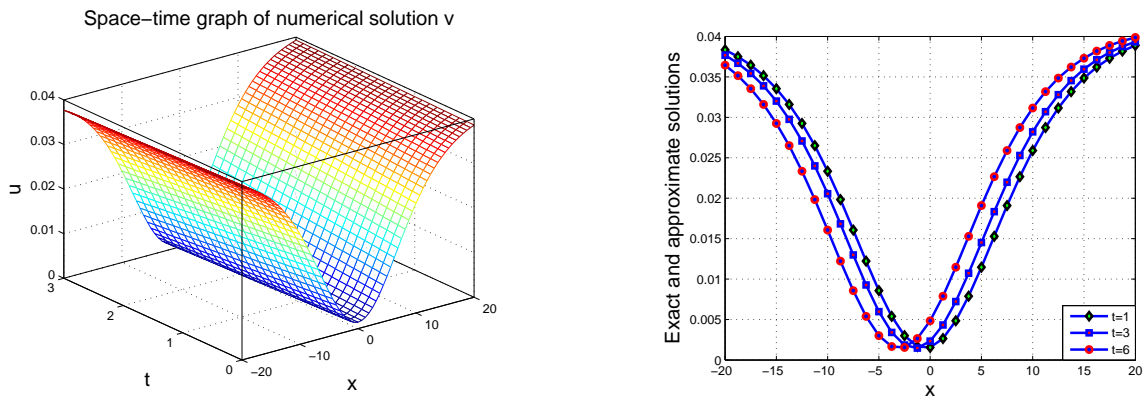


Figure 5: The left figure shows the space-time graphs of  $V$ , while the right figure shows the graph of  $V$  for different values of  $t$ .

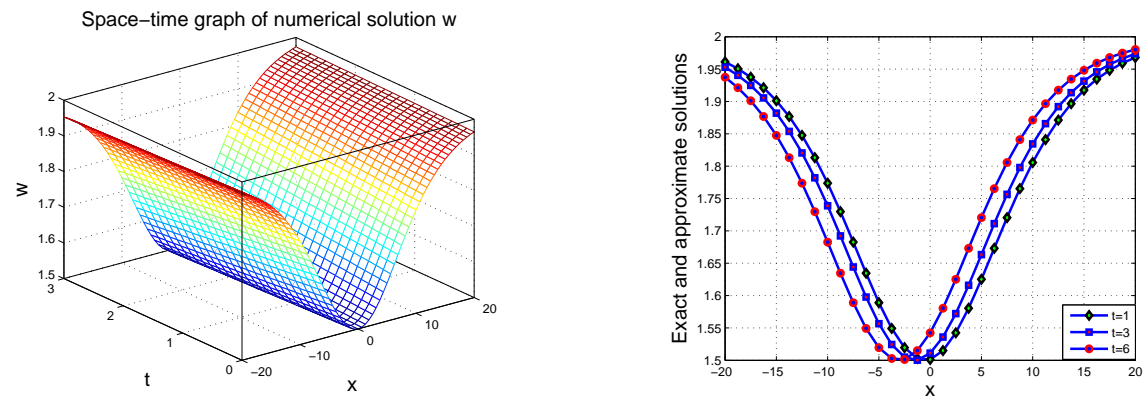


Figure 6: The left figure shows the space-time graphs of  $W$ , while the right figure shows the graph of  $W$  for different values of  $t$ .

## 6 Conclusion

In this paper, the generalized Hirota-Satsuma (HS) coupled Korteweg-de Vries (KdV) equation is solved numerically using the Fourier pseudospectral method. The time derivative of discrete scheme is approximated by the forward finite difference formula while the pseudospectral method is used in the space direction. The stability and convergence of the discrete scheme are proved by energy estimation method. The obtained solution is presented graphically at various time levels. The numerical results reveal that the Fourier pseudospectral method is convenient, effective and accurate to solve the generalized HS coupled KdV equations.

## References

- [1] Hirota Ryogo, Satsuma Junkichi, N-Soliton Solutions of Model Equations for Shallow Water Waves, *Journal of the Physical Society of Japan*, 40(2) (1976), 611–620.
- [2] Hirota Ryogo, Satsuma Junkichi, Soliton solutions of a coupled Korteweg-de Vries equation, *Phys. Lett. A.*, 85 (1981), 407–408.
- [3] D.D.Ganji, M.Rafei, Solitary wave solutions for a generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation by homotopy perturbation method. *Phys. Lett. A.*, 356 (2006), 131–137.
- [4] S. Abbasbandy, The application of homotopy analysis method to solve a generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation, *Physics Lett. A.*, 361 (2007), 478–483.
- [5] A.H.A. Ali, The modified extended tanh-function method for solving coupled MKdV and coupled Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equations. *Phys. Lett. A.*, 363 (2007), 420–425.
- [6] Zhang Huiqun, New exact solutions for two generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV systems. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* 12 (2007), 1120–1127.
- [7] Rong Jihong, Tang Shengqiang, Huang Wentao, Wang Zhaojuan, Bifurcations of travelling wave solutions for a generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV system. *Far East J. Appl. Math.* 31 (2008), 177–197.
- [8] Yang Feng, Hong-qing Zhang, A new auxiliary function method for solving the generalized coupled Hirota-Satsuma KdV system, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 200 (2008), 283–288.
- [9] Z.Z.Ganji, D.D.Ganji, Solitary wave solutions for a time-fraction generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation by an analytical technique. *Appl. Math. Model.*, 33 (2009), 3107–3113.
- [10] A.S.Abdel Rady , E.S.Osman, Khalfallah Mohammed, On soliton solutions for a generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.* 15 (2010), 264–274.
- [11] Baojian Hong, New exact Jacobi elliptic functions solutions for the generalized coupled Hirota-Satsuma KdV system, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 217 (2010), 472–479.
- [12] Jin-Ming Zuo, Yao-Ming Zhang, Application of the expansion method to solve coupled MKdV equations and coupled Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equations, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 217 (2011), 5936–5941.
- [13] Manlin Xie, Xuanhao Ding, A new method for a generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 217 (2011), 7117–7125.
- [14] Feng Dahe, Li Kezan, Exact traveling wave solutions for a generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation by Fan sub-equation method. *Phys. Lett. A.*, 375 (2011), 2201–2210.
- [15] Reza Abazari, Malek Abazari, Numerical simulation of generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation by RDTM and comparison with DTM. *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Numer. Simul.*, 17 (2012), 619–629.

- [16] Junchao Chen, Yong Chen, Bao-Feng Feng, Hanmin Zhu, Multi-component generalizations of the Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation *Applied Mathematics Letters*, 37 (2014), 15–21.
- [17] B.Mina, Abd-el-Malek, Amr M. Amin, Lie group method for solving generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled Korteweg-de Vries (KdV) equations, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 224, (2013), 501–516.
- [18] R. Peyret, *Spectral methods in incompressible viscous flow*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2002.
- [19] J.P.Boyd, *Chebyshev and Fourier spectral methods*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2002.
- [20] D.Gottlieb, S.A.Orszag, *Numerical Analysis of Spectral Methods: Theory and Applications*, SIAM, Philadelphia, 1977.
- [21] J.C.Mason, T.N.Phillips (Guest Editors), *Chebyshev Polynomials and Spectral Methods*, *Numerical Algorithms*, 38 (2005), 1–236.
- [22] C.Bernardi, Y.Maday, *Spectral methods*, in: P.G. Ciarlet, J.L. Lions (Eds.), *Handbook of Numerical Analysis*, Elsevier Science, North-Holland, 5 (1997), 209–485.
- [23] C.Canuto, M.Y.Hussaini, A.Quarteroni, T.A.Zang, *Spectral methods (fundamental in single domains)* Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2006.
- [24] A.Quarteroni, A.Valli, *Numerical approximation of partial differential equations*, *Springer Series in Comput. Math.*, Springer-Verlag, 1997.
- [25] E.Fan, Soliton solutions for a generalized HirotaSatsuma coupled KdV equation and a coupled MKdV equation. *Phys Lett A.*, 282 (2001), 18-22.
- [26] Guo Benyu and Heping Ma, Fourier pseudo-spectral method for Burgers equation, *Northeastern Math. J.*, 4 (1986), 383–394.
- [27] M.T. Darvishi, F.Khani, S.Kheybari, Spectral collocation solution of a generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equation, *International Journal of Computer Mathematics*, 84 (2007), 541–551.
- [28] Jing-Bo Chen, Symplectic and Multisymplectic Fourier Pseudospectral Discretizations for the Klein-Gordon Equation, *Letters in Mathematical Physics*, 75 (2006). 293–305.
- [29] S.N.Antontsev, J.I.Daz, S.Shmarev, *Energy methods for free boundary problems. Applications to nonlinear PDEs and fluid mechanics*. *Progress in Nonlinear Differential Equations and their Applications*, 48. Birkhuser Boston, Inc., Boston, MA, 2002.





# TABLE OF CONTENTS, JOURNAL OF COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 23, NO. 8, 2017

The Naimark-Sacker Bifurcation and Symptotic Approximation of the Invariant Curve of a Certain Difference Equation, T. Khyat, M. R. S Kulenović, and E. Pilavy,.....	1335
Triple Reverse Order Law for Moore-Penrose Inverse of Operator Product, Zhiping Xiong and Yingying Qin,.....	1347
Differential Equations Arising From Certain Sheffer Sequence, T. Kim, D. V. Dolgy, D. S. Kim, H. I. Kwon, and J. J. Seo,.....	1359
Hyers-Ulam Stability of the First Order Inhomogeneous Matrix Difference Equation, Soon-Mo Jung and Young Woo Nam,.....	1368
Self Adjoint Operator Ostrowski type Inequalities, George A. Anastassiou,.....	1384
Integer and Fractional Self Adjoint Operator Opial type Inequalities, George A. Anastassiou,.....	1398
Numerical Solution of the Generalized Hirota-Satsuma Coupled Korteweg-de Vries Equation by Fourier Pseudospectral Method, Abdur Rashid, Dianchen Lu, Ahmad Izani Md.Ismail, and Muhammad Abbas,.....	1412